

北大版海外汉语教材·汉字教程系列

汉字部首教程(课本)

LEARNING 100 CHINESE RADICALS (TEXTBOOK)

[美] 沈禾玲 王 平 [美] 蔡真慧 编著

by Helen H. Shen Ping Wang Chen-hui Tsai



北京大学出版社
PEKING UNIVERSITY PRESS

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

汉字部首教程/(美)沈禾玲,王平,(美)蔡真慧编著.—北京:北京大学出版社,2009.7
(北大版海外汉语教材·汉字教程系列)

ISBN 978-7-301-07845-7

I. 汉… II. ①沈… ②王… ③蔡… III. 汉字-部首-对外汉语教学-教学参考资料
IV. H195.4

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2009)第 116719 号

书 名: 汉字部首教程

著作责任者: [美] 沈禾玲 王平 [美] 蔡真慧 编著

责任编辑: 沈 岚

封面设计: 宗爱群

标准书号: ISBN 978-7-301-07845-7/H·1161

出版发行: 北京大学出版社

地 址: 北京市海淀区成府路 205 号 100871

网 址: <http://www.pup.cn>

电 话: 邮购部 62752015 发行部 62750672 编辑部 62753374 出版部 62754962

电子邮箱: zpup@pup.pku.edu.cn

印 刷 者: 北京大学印刷厂

经 销 者: 新华书店

889 毫米×1194 毫米 大 16 开本 25.75 印张 805 千字

2009 年 7 月第 1 版 2009 年 7 月第 1 次印刷

定 价: 85.00 元(全二册)

未经许可,不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。

版权所有,侵权必究 举报电话: 010-62752024

电子邮箱: fd@pup.pku.edu.cn

前言

《汉字部首教程》是专门为外国学生编写的汉字部首学习教材。汉语不同于英语或别的以罗马字母为书写符号的语言,它的书写形式是用笔画组成的方块符号,称为“汉字”。汉字的特点是它的书写符号跟这个符号所代表的意义有很强的联系。从结构上讲,汉字可以分为独体字与合体字两种。独体字的字形具有整体性,从结构上不能分拆。合体字的字形具有可分拆性,从结构上可以分出独体字。

独体字中许多就是汉字的部首。什么是部首?如果我们从书写的形式上对合体字进行分类,我们就会发现很多合体字含有相同的基本字,比如合体字岩、屿、峡、峰都含有相同的基本字“山”。而且这些合体字的意思都与“山”有关系,我们就称“山”为部首。有了部首,我们就可以在字典中把含有相同部首的汉字放在一起,便于查找,这种用部首作为序来查找字典中的汉字的方法,我们称为部首检字法。

在这本教材中,我们介绍一百个高频率部首。所谓高频率部首,是按照部首在汉字中出现的频率来计算的,一个特定的部首出现在汉字中的次数越多,它的频率就越高,对我们学习包含这个部首的汉字的帮助也越大。部首在汉字中主要作用是表示汉字的字义,但是有时候,它们也表示汉字的字音,比如上面提到的部首“山”在“岩”中是表义的,但是在另一个汉字“汕”中却表示该字的读音。因此,学习高频率部首,可以帮助我们记住很多合体字的形、义、音。

本教材中介绍的100个高频率部首是根据《现代汉语词典》所收的9999汉字中统计出来的。根据这100个部首在常用词中表义、表形和表音的情况以及那些常用词在国外初级汉语课本中的出现频率,一丨丿、㇏ 𠂇 𠂉 𠂊 𠂋 𠂌 𠂍 𠂎 𠂏 𠂐 𠂑 𠂒 𠂓 𠂔 𠂕 𠂖 𠂗 𠂘 𠂙 𠂚 𠂛 𠂜 𠂝 𠂞 𠂟 𠂠 𠂡 𠂢 𠂣 𠂤 𠂥 𠂦 𠂧 𠂨 𠂩 𠂪 𠂫 𠂬 𠂭 𠂮 𠂯 𠂰 𠂱 𠂲 𠂳 𠂴 𠂵 𠂶 𠂷 𠂸 𠂹 𠂺 𠂻 𠂼 𠂽 𠂾 𠂿 𠃀 𠃁 𠃂 𠃃 𠃄 𠃅 𠃆 𠃇 𠃈 𠃉 𠃊 𠃋 𠃌 𠃍 𠃎 𠃏 𠃐 𠃑 𠃒 𠃓 𠃔 𠃕 𠃖 𠃗 𠃘 𠃙 𠃚 𠃛 𠃜 𠃝 𠃞 𠃟 𠃠 𠃡 𠃢 𠃣 𠃤 𠃥 𠃦 𠃧 𠃨 𠃩 𠃪 𠃫 𠃬 𠃭 𠃮 𠃯 𠃰 𠃱 𠃲 𠃳 𠃴 𠃵 𠃶 𠃷 𠃸 𠃹 𠃺 𠃻 𠃼 𠃽 𠃾 𠃿 𠄀 𠄁 𠄂 𠄃 𠄄 𠄅 𠄆 𠄇 𠄈 𠄉 𠄊 𠄋 𠄌 𠄍 𠄎 𠄏 𠄐 𠄑 𠄒 𠄓 𠄔 𠄕 𠄖 𠄗 𠄘 𠄙 𠄚 𠄛 𠄜 𠄝 𠄞 𠄟 𠄠 𠄡 𠄢 𠄣 𠄤 𠄥 𠄦 𠄧 𠄨 𠄩 𠄪 𠄫 𠄬 𠄭 𠄮 𠄯 𠄰 𠄱 𠄲 𠄳 𠄴 𠄵 𠄶 𠄷 𠄸 𠄹 𠄺 𠄻 𠄼 𠄽 𠄾 𠄿 𠅀 𠅁 𠅂 𠅃 𠅄 𠅅 𠅆 𠅇 𠅈 𠅉 𠅊 𠅋 𠅌 𠅍 𠅎 𠅏 𠅐 𠅑 𠅒 𠅓 𠅔 𠅕 𠅖 𠅗 𠅘 𠅙 𠅚 𠅛 𠅜 𠅝 𠅞 𠅟 𠅠 𠅡 𠅢 𠅣 𠅤 𠅥 𠅦 𠅧 𠅨 𠅩 𠅪 𠅫 𠅬 𠅭 𠅮 𠅯 𠅰 𠅱 𠅲 𠅳 𠅴 𠅵 𠅶 𠅷 𠅸 𠅹 𠅺 𠅻 𠅼 𠅽 𠅾 𠅿 𠆀 𠆁 𠆂 𠆃 𠆄 𠆅 𠆆 𠆇 𠆈 𠆉 𠆊 𠆋 𠆌 𠆍 𠆎 𠆏 𠆐 𠆑 𠆒 𠆓 𠆔 𠆕 𠆖 𠆗 𠆘 𠆙 𠆚 𠆛 𠆜 𠆝 𠆞 𠆟 𠆠 𠆡 𠆢 𠆣 𠆤 𠆥 𠆦 𠆧 𠆨 𠆩 𠆪 𠆫 𠆬 𠆭 𠆮 𠆯 𠆰 𠆱 𠆲 𠆳 𠆴 𠆵 𠆶 𠆷 𠆸 𠆹 𠆺 𠆻 𠆼 𠆽 𠆾 𠆿 𠇀 𠇁 𠇂 𠇃 𠇄 𠇅 𠇆 𠇇 𠇈 𠇉 𠇊 𠇋 𠇌 𠇍 𠇎 𠇏 𠇐 𠇑 𠇒 𠇓 𠇔 𠇕 𠇖 𠇗 𠇘 𠇙 𠇚 𠇛 𠇜 𠇝 𠇞 𠇟 𠇠 𠇡 𠇢 𠇣 𠇤 𠇥 𠇦 𠇧 𠇨 𠇩 𠇪 𠇫 𠇬 𠇭 𠇮 𠇯 𠇰 𠇱 𠇲 𠇳 𠇴 𠇵 𠇶 𠇷 𠇸 𠇹 𠇺 𠇻 𠇼 𠇽 𠇾 𠇿 𠈀 𠈁 𠈂 𠈃 𠈄 𠈅 𠈆 𠈇 𠈈 𠈉 𠈊 𠈋 𠈌 𠈍 𠈎 𠈏 𠈐 𠈑 𠈒 𠈓 𠈔 𠈕 𠈖 𠈗 𠈘 𠈙 𠈚 𠈛 𠈜 𠈝 𠈞 𠈟 𠈠 𠈡 𠈢 𠈣 𠈤 𠈥 𠈦 𠈧 𠈨 𠈩 𠈪 𠈫 𠈬 𠈭 𠈮 𠈯 𠈰 𠈱 𠈲 𠈳 𠈴 𠈵 𠈶 𠈷 𠈸 𠈹 𠈺 𠈻 𠈼 𠈽 𠈾 𠈿 𠉀 𠉁 𠉂 𠉃 𠉄 𠉅 𠉆 𠉇 𠉈 𠉉 𠉊 𠉋 𠉌 𠉍 𠉎 𠉏 𠉐 𠉑 𠉒 𠉓 𠉔 𠉕 𠉖 𠉗 𠉘 𠉙 𠉚 𠉛 𠉜 𠉝 𠉞 𠉟 𠉠 𠉡 𠉢 𠉣 𠉤 𠉥 𠉦 𠉧 𠉨 𠉩 𠉪 𠉫 𠉬 𠉭 𠉮 𠉯 𠉰 𠉱 𠉲 𠉳 𠉴 𠉵 𠉶 𠉷 𠉸 𠉹 𠉺 𠉻 𠉼 𠉽 𠉾 𠉿 𠊀 𠊁 𠊂 𠊃 𠊄 𠊅 𠊆 𠊇 𠊈 𠊉 𠊊 𠊋 𠊌 𠊍 𠊎 𠊏 𠊐 𠊑 𠊒 𠊓 𠊔 𠊕 𠊖 𠊗 𠊘 𠊙 𠊚 𠊛 𠊜 𠊝 𠊞 𠊟 𠊠 𠊡 𠊢 𠊣 𠊤 𠊥 𠊦 𠊧 𠊨 𠊩 𠊪 𠊫 𠊬 𠊭 𠊮 𠊯 𠊰 𠊱 𠊲 𠊳 𠊴 𠊵 𠊶 𠊷 𠊸 𠊹 𠊺 𠊻 𠊼 𠊽 𠊾 𠊿 𠋀 𠋁 𠋂 𠋃 𠋄 𠋅 𠋆 𠋇 𠋈 𠋉 𠋊 𠋋 𠋌 𠋍 𠋎 𠋏 𠋐 𠋑 𠋒 𠋓 𠋔 𠋕 𠋖 𠋗 𠋘 𠋙 𠋚 𠋛 𠋜 𠋝 𠋞 𠋟 𠋠 𠋡 𠋢 𠋣 𠋤 𠋥 𠋦 𠋧 𠋨 𠋩 𠋪 𠋫 𠋬 𠋭 𠋮 𠋯 𠋰 𠋱 𠋲 𠋳 𠋴 𠋵 𠋶 𠋷 𠋸 𠋹 𠋺 𠋻 𠋼 𠋽 𠋾 𠋿 𠌀 𠌁 𠌂 𠌃 𠌄 𠌅 𠌆 𠌇 𠌈 𠌉 𠌊 𠌋 𠌌 𠌍 𠌎 𠌏 𠌐 𠌑 𠌒 𠌓 𠌔 𠌕 𠌖 𠌗 𠌘 𠌙 𠌚 𠌛 𠌜 𠌝 𠌞 𠌟 𠌠 𠌡 𠌢 𠌣 𠌤 𠌥 𠌦 𠌧 𠌨 𠌩 𠌪 𠌫 𠌬 𠌭 𠌮 𠌯 𠌰 𠌱 𠌲 𠌳 𠌴 𠌵 𠌶 𠌷 𠌸 𠌹 𠌺 𠌻 𠌼 𠌽 𠌾 𠌿 𠍀 𠍁 𠍂 𠍃 𠍄 𠍅 𠍆 𠍇 𠍈 𠍉 𠍊 𠍋 𠍌 𠍍 𠍎 𠍏 𠍐 𠍑 𠍒 𠍓 𠍔 𠍕 𠍖 𠍗 𠍘 𠍙 𠍚 𠍛 𠍜 𠍝 𠍞 𠍟 𠍠 𠍡 𠍢 𠍣 𠍤 𠍥 𠍦 𠍧 𠍨 𠍩 𠍪 𠍫 𠍬 𠍭 𠍮 𠍯 𠍰 𠍱 𠍲 𠍳 𠍴 𠍵 𠍶 𠍷 𠍸 𠍹 𠍺 𠍻 𠍼 𠍽 𠍾 𠍿 𠎀 𠎁 𠎂 𠎃 𠎄 𠎅 𠎆 𠎇 𠎈 𠎉 𠎊 𠎋 𠎌 𠎍 𠎎 𠎏 𠎐 𠎑 𠎒 𠎓 𠎔 𠎕 𠎖 𠎗 𠎘 𠎙 𠎚 𠎛 𠎜 𠎝 𠎞 𠎟 𠎠 𠎡 𠎢 𠎣 𠎤 𠎥 𠎦 𠎧 𠎨 𠎩 𠎪 𠎫 𠎬 𠎭 𠎮 𠎯 𠎰 𠎱 𠎲 𠎳 𠎴 𠎵 𠎶 𠎷 𠎸 𠎹 𠎺 𠎻 𠎼 𠎽 𠎾 𠎿 𠏀 𠏁 𠏂 𠏃 𠏄 𠏅 𠏆 𠏇 𠏈 𠏉 𠏊 𠏋 𠏌 𠏍 𠏎 𠏏 𠏐 𠏑 𠏒 𠏓 𠏔 𠏕 𠏖 𠏗 𠏘 𠏙 𠏚 𠏛 𠏜 𠏝 𠏞 𠏟 𠏠 𠏡 𠏢 𠏣 𠏤 𠏥 𠏦 𠏧 𠏨 𠏩 𠏪 𠏫 𠏬 𠏭 𠏮 𠏯 𠏰 𠏱 𠏲 𠏳 𠏴 𠏵 𠏶 𠏷 𠏸 𠏹 𠏺 𠏻 𠏼 𠏽 𠏾 𠏿 𠐀 𠐁 𠐂 𠐃 𠐄 𠐅 𠐆 𠐇 𠐈 𠐉 𠐊 𠐋 𠐌 𠐍 𠐎 𠐏 𠐐 𠐑 𠐒 𠐓 𠐔 𠐕 𠐖 𠐗 𠐘 𠐙 𠐚 𠐛 𠐜 𠐝 𠐞 𠐟 𠐠 𠐡 𠐢 𠐣 𠐤 𠐥 𠐦 𠐧 𠐨 𠐩 𠐪 𠐫 𠐬 𠐭 𠐮 𠐯 𠐰 𠐱 𠐲 𠐳 𠐴 𠐵 𠐶 𠐷 𠐸 𠐹 𠐺 𠐻 𠐼 𠐽 𠐾 𠐿 𠑀 𠑁 𠑂 𠑃 𠑄 𠑅 𠑆 𠑇 𠑈 𠑉 𠑊 𠑋 𠑌 𠑍 𠑎 𠑏 𠑐 𠑑 𠑒 𠑓 𠑔 𠑕 𠑖 𠑗 𠑘 𠑙 𠑚 𠑛 𠑜 𠑝 𠑞 𠑟 𠑠 𠑡 𠑢 𠑣 𠑤 𠑥 𠑦 𠑧 𠑨 𠑩 𠑪 𠑫 𠑬 𠑭 𠑮 𠑯 𠑰 𠑱 𠑲 𠑳 𠑴 𠑵 𠑶 𠑷 𠑸 𠑹 𠑺 𠑻 𠑼 𠑽 𠑾 𠑿 𠒀 𠒁 𠒂 𠒃 𠒄 𠒅 𠒆 𠒇 𠒈 𠒉 𠒊 𠒋 𠒌 𠒍 𠒎 𠒏 𠒐 𠒑 𠒒 𠒓 𠒔 𠒕 𠒖 𠒗 𠒘 𠒙 𠒚 𠒛 𠒜 𠒝 𠒞 𠒟 𠒠 𠒡 𠒢 𠒣 𠒤 𠒥 𠒦 𠒧 𠒨 𠒩 𠒪 𠒫 𠒬 𠒭 𠒮 𠒯 𠒰 𠒱 𠒲 𠒳 𠒴 𠒵 𠒶 𠒷 𠒸 𠒹 𠒺 𠒻 𠒼 𠒽 𠒾 𠒿 𠓀 𠓁 𠓂 𠓃 𠓄 𠓅 𠓆 𠓇 𠓈 𠓉 𠓊 𠓋 𠓌 𠓍 𠓎 𠓏 𠓐 𠓑 𠓒 𠓓 𠓔 𠓕 𠓖 𠓗 𠓘 𠓙 𠓚 𠓛 𠓜 𠓝 𠓞 𠓟 𠓠 𠓡 𠓢 𠓣 𠓤 𠓥 𠓦 𠓧 𠓨 𠓩 𠓪 𠓫 𠓬 𠓭 𠓮 𠓯 𠓰 𠓱 𠓲 𠓳 𠓴 𠓵 𠓶 𠓷 𠓸 𠓹 𠓺 𠓻 𠓼 𠓽 𠓾 𠓿 𠔀 𠔁 𠔂 𠔃 𠔄 𠔅 𠔆 𠔇 𠔈 𠔉 𠔊 𠔋 𠔌 𠔍 𠔎 𠔏 𠔐 𠔑 𠔒 𠔓 𠔔 𠔕 𠔖 𠔗 𠔘 𠔙 𠔚 𠔛 𠔜 𠔝 𠔞 𠔟 𠔠 𠔡 𠔢 𠔣 𠔤 𠔥 𠔦 𠔧 𠔨 𠔩 𠔪 𠔫 𠔬 𠔭 𠔮 𠔯 𠔰 𠔱 𠔲 𠔳 𠔴 𠔵 𠔶 𠔷 𠔸 𠔹 𠔺 𠔻 𠔼 𠔽 𠔾 𠔿 𠕀 𠕁 𠕂 𠕃 𠕄 𠕅 𠕆 𠕇 𠕈 𠕉 𠕊 𠕋 𠕌 𠕍 𠕎 𠕏 𠕐 𠕑 𠕒 𠕓 𠕔 𠕕 𠕖 𠕗 𠕘 𠕙 𠕚 𠕛 𠕜 𠕝 𠕞 𠕟 𠕠 𠕡 𠕢 𠕣 𠕤 𠕥 𠕦 𠕧 𠕨 𠕩 𠕪 𠕫 𠕬 𠕭 𠕮 𠕯 𠕰 𠕱 𠕲 𠕳 𠕴 𠕵 𠕶 𠕷 𠕸 𠕹 𠕺 𠕻 𠕼 𠕽 𠕾 𠕿 𠖀 𠖁 𠖂 𠖃 𠖄 𠖅 𠖆 𠖇 𠖈 𠖉 𠖊 𠖋 𠖌 𠖍 𠖎 𠖏 𠖐 𠖑 𠖒 𠖓 𠖔 𠖕 𠖖 𠖗 𠖘 𠖙 𠖚 𠖛 𠖜 𠖝 𠖞 𠖟 𠖠 𠖡 𠖢 𠖣 𠖤 𠖥 𠖦 𠖧 𠖨 𠖩 𠖪 𠖫 𠖬 𠖭 𠖮 𠖯 𠖰 𠖱 𠖲 𠖳 𠖴 𠖵 𠖶 𠖷 𠖸 𠖹 𠖺 𠖻 𠖼 𠖽 𠖾 𠖿 𠗀 𠗁 𠗂 𠗃 𠗄 𠗅 𠗆 𠗇 𠗈 𠗉 𠗊 𠗋 𠗌 𠗍 𠗎 𠗏 𠗐 𠗑 𠗒 𠗓 𠗔 𠗕 𠗖 𠗗 𠗘 𠗙 𠗚 𠗛 𠗜 𠗝 𠗞 𠗟 𠗠 𠗡 𠗢 𠗣 𠗤 𠗥 𠗦 𠗧 𠗨 𠗩 𠗪 𠗫 𠗬 𠗭 𠗮 𠗯 𠗰 𠗱 𠗲 𠗳 𠗴 𠗵 𠗶 𠗷 𠗸 𠗹 𠗺 𠗻 𠗼 𠗽 𠗾 𠗿 𠘀 𠘁 𠘂 𠘃 𠘄 𠘅 𠘆 𠘇 𠘈 𠘉 𠘊 𠘋 𠘌 𠘍 𠘎 𠘏 𠘐 𠘑 𠘒 𠘓 𠘔 𠘕 𠘖 𠘗 𠘘 𠘙 𠘚 𠘛 𠘜 𠘝 𠘞 𠘟 𠘠 𠘡 𠘢 𠘣 𠘤 𠘥 𠘦 𠘧 𠘨 𠘩 𠘪 𠘫 𠘬 𠘭 𠘮 𠘯 𠘰 𠘱 𠘲 𠘳 𠘴 𠘵 𠘶 𠘷 𠘸 𠘹 𠘺 𠘻 𠘼 𠘽 𠘾 𠘿 𠙀 𠙁 𠙂 𠙃 𠙄 𠙅 𠙆 𠙇 𠙈 𠙉 𠙊 𠙋 𠙌 𠙍 𠙎 𠙏 𠙐 𠙑 𠙒 𠙓 𠙔 𠙕 𠙖 𠙗 𠙘 𠙙 𠙚 𠙛 𠙜 𠙝 𠙞 𠙟 𠙠 𠙡 𠙢 𠙣 𠙤 𠙥 𠙦 𠙧 𠙨 𠙩 𠙪 𠙫 𠙬 𠙭 𠙮 𠙯 𠙰 𠙱 𠙲 𠙳 𠙴 𠙵 𠙶 𠙷 𠙸 𠙹 𠙺 𠙻 𠙼 𠙽 𠙾 𠙿 𠚀 𠚁 𠚂 𠚃 𠚄 𠚅 𠚆 𠚇 𠚈 𠚉 𠚊 𠚋 𠚌 𠚍 𠚎 𠚏 𠚐 𠚑 𠚒 𠚓 𠚔 𠚕 𠚖 𠚗 𠚘 𠚙 𠚚 𠚛 𠚜 𠚝 𠚞 𠚟 𠚠 𠚡 𠚢 𠚣 𠚤 𠚥 𠚦 𠚧 𠚨 𠚩 𠚪 𠚫 𠚬 𠚭 𠚮 𠚯 𠚰 𠚱 𠚲 𠚳 𠚴 𠚵 𠚶 𠚷 𠚸 𠚹 𠚺 𠚻 𠚼 𠚽 𠚾 𠚿 𠛀 𠛁 𠛂 𠛃 𠛄 𠛅 𠛆 𠛇 𠛈 𠛉 𠛊 𠛋 𠛌 𠛍 𠛎 𠛏 𠛐 𠛑 𠛒 𠛓 𠛔 𠛕 𠛖 𠛗 𠛘 𠛙 𠛚 𠛛 𠛜 𠛝 𠛞 𠛟 𠛠 𠛡 𠛢 𠛣 𠛤 𠛥 𠛦 𠛧 𠛨 𠛩 𠛪 𠛫 𠛬 𠛭 𠛮 𠛯 𠛰 𠛱 𠛲 𠛳 𠛴 𠛵 𠛶 𠛷 𠛸 𠛹 𠛺 𠛻 𠛼 𠛽 𠛾 𠛿 𠜀 𠜁 𠜂 𠜃 𠜄 𠜅 𠜆 𠜇 𠜈 𠜉 𠜊 𠜋 𠜌 𠜍 𠜎 𠜏 𠜐 𠜑 𠜒 𠜓 𠜔 𠜕 𠜖 𠜗 𠜘 𠜙 𠜚 𠜛 𠜜 𠜝 𠜞 𠜟 𠜠 𠜡 𠜢 𠜣 𠜤 𠜥 𠜦 𠜧 𠜨 𠜩 𠜪 𠜫 𠜬 𠜭 𠜮 𠜯 𠜰 𠜱 𠜲 𠜳 𠜴 𠜵 𠜶 𠜷 𠜸 𠜹 𠜺 𠜻 𠜼 𠜽 𠜾 𠜿 𠝀 𠝁 𠝂 𠝃 𠝄 𠝅 𠝆 𠝇 𠝈 𠝉 𠝊 𠝋 𠝌 𠝍 𠝎 𠝏 𠝐 𠝑 𠝒 𠝓 𠝔 𠝕 𠝖 𠝗 𠝘 𠝙 𠝚 𠝛 𠝜 𠝝 𠝞 𠝟 𠝠 𠝡 𠝢 𠝣 𠝤 𠝥 𠝦 𠝧 𠝨 𠝩 𠝪 𠝫 𠝬 𠝭 𠝮 𠝯 𠝰 𠝱 𠝲 𠝳 𠝴 𠝵 𠝶 𠝷 𠝸 𠝹 𠝺 𠝻 𠝼 𠝽 𠝾 𠝿 𠞀 𠞁 𠞂 𠞃 𠞄 𠞅 𠞆 𠞇 𠞈 𠞉 𠞊 𠞋 𠞌 𠞍 𠞎 𠞏 𠞐 𠞑 𠞒 𠞓 𠞔 𠞕 𠞖 𠞗 𠞘 𠞙 𠞚 𠞛 𠞜 𠞝 𠞞 𠞟 𠞠 𠞡 𠞢 𠞣 𠞤 𠞥 𠞦 𠞧 𠞨 𠞩 𠞪 𠞫 𠞬 𠞭 𠞮 𠞯 𠞰 𠞱 𠞲 𠞳 𠞴 𠞵 𠞶 𠞷 𠞸 𠞹 𠞺 𠞻 𠞼 𠞽 𠞾 𠞿 𠟀 𠟁 𠟂 𠟃 𠟄 𠟅 𠟆 𠟇 𠟈 𠟉 𠟊 𠟋 𠟌 𠟍 𠟎 𠟏 𠟐 𠟑 𠟒 𠟓 𠟔 𠟕 𠟖 𠟗 𠟘 𠟙 𠟚 𠟛 𠟜 𠟝 𠟞 𠟟 𠟠 𠟡 𠟢 𠟣 𠟤 𠟥 𠟦 𠟧 𠟨 𠟩 𠟪 𠟫 𠟬 𠟭 𠟮 𠟯 𠟰 𠟱 𠟲 𠟳 𠟴 𠟵 𠟶 𠟷 𠟸 𠟹 𠟺 𠟻 𠟼 𠟽 𠟾 𠟿 𠠀 𠠁 𠠂 𠠃 𠠄 𠠅 𠠆 𠠇 𠠈 𠠉 𠠊 𠠋 𠠌 𠠍 𠠎 𠠏 𠠐 𠠑 𠠒 𠠓 𠠔 𠠕 𠠖 𠠗 𠠘 𠠙 𠠚 𠠛 𠠜 𠠝 𠠞 𠠟 𠠠 𠠡 𠠢 𠠣 𠠤 𠠥 𠠦 𠠧 𠠨 𠠩 𠠪 𠠫 𠠬 𠠭 𠠮 𠠯 𠠰 𠠱 𠠲 𠠳 𠠴 𠠵 𠠶 𠠷 𠠸 𠠹 𠠺 𠠻 𠠼 𠠽 𠠾 𠠿 𠡀 𠡁 𠡂 𠡃 𠡄 𠡅 𠡆 𠡇 𠡈 𠡉 𠡊 𠡋 𠡌 𠡍 𠡎 𠡏 𠡐 𠡑 𠡒 𠡓 𠡔 𠡕 𠡖 𠡗 𠡘 𠡙 𠡚 𠡛 𠡜 𠡝 𠡞 𠡟 𠡠 𠡡 𠡢 𠡣 𠡤 𠡥 𠡦 𠡧 𠡨 𠡩 𠡪 𠡫 𠡬 𠡭 𠡮 𠡯 𠡰 𠡱 𠡲 𠡳 𠡴 𠡵 𠡶 𠡷 𠡸 𠡹 𠡺 𠡻 𠡼 𠡽 𠡾 𠡿 𠢀 𠢁 𠢂 𠢃 𠢄 𠢅 𠢆 𠢇 𠢈 𠢉 𠢊 𠢋 𠢌 𠢍 𠢎 𠢏 𠢐 𠢑 𠢒 𠢓 𠢔 𠢕 𠢖 𠢗 𠢘 𠢙 𠢚 𠢛 𠢜 𠢝 𠢞 𠢟 𠢠 𠢡 𠢢 𠢣 𠢤 𠢥 𠢦 𠢧 𠢨 𠢩 𠢪 𠢫 𠢬 𠢭 𠢮 𠢯 𠢰 𠢱 𠢲 𠢳 𠢴 𠢵 𠢶 𠢷 𠢸 𠢹 𠢺 𠢻 𠢼 𠢽 𠢾 𠢿 𠣀 𠣁 𠣂 𠣃 𠣄 𠣅 𠣆 𠣇 𠣈 𠣉 𠣊 𠣋 𠣌 𠣍 𠣎 𠣏 𠣐 𠣑 𠣒 𠣓 𠣔 𠣕 𠣖 𠣗 𠣘 𠣙 𠣚 𠣛 𠣜 𠣝 𠣞 𠣟 𠣠 𠣡 𠣢 𠣣 𠣤 𠣥 𠣦 𠣧 𠣨 𠣩 𠣪 𠣫 𠣬 𠣭 𠣮 𠣯 𠣰 𠣱 𠣲 𠣳 𠣴 𠣵 𠣶 𠣷 𠣸 𠣹 𠣺 𠣻 𠣼 𠣽 𠣾 𠣿 𠤀 𠤁 𠤂 𠤃 𠤄 𠤅 𠤆 𠤇 𠤈 𠤉 𠤊 𠤋 𠤌 𠤍 𠤎 𠤏 𠤐 𠤑 𠤒 𠤓 𠤔 𠤕 𠤖 𠤗 𠤘 𠤙 𠤚 𠤛 𠤜 𠤝 𠤞 𠤟 𠤠 𠤡 𠤢 𠤣 𠤤 𠤥 𠤦 𠤧 𠤨 𠤩 𠤪 𠤫 𠤬 𠤭 𠤮 𠤯 𠤰 𠤱 𠤲 𠤳 𠤴 𠤵 𠤶 𠤷 𠤸 𠤹 𠤺 𠤻 𠤼 𠤽 𠤾 𠤿 𠥀 𠥁 𠥂 𠥃 𠥄 𠥅 𠥆 𠥇 𠥈 𠥉 𠥊 𠥋 𠥌 𠥍 𠥎 𠥏 𠥐 𠥑 𠥒 𠥓 𠥔 𠥕 𠥖 𠥗 𠥘 𠥙 𠥚 𠥛 𠥜 𠥝 𠥞 𠥟 𠥠 𠥡 𠥢 𠥣 𠥤 𠥥 𠥦 𠥧 𠥨 𠥩 𠥪 𠥫 𠥬 𠥭 𠥮 𠥯 𠥰 𠥱 𠥲 𠥳 𠥴 𠥵 𠥶 𠥷 𠥸 𠥹 𠥺 𠥻 𠥼 𠥽 𠥾 𠥿 𠦀 𠦁 𠦂 𠦃 𠦄 𠦅 𠦆 𠦇 𠦈 𠦉 𠦊 𠦋 𠦌 𠦍 𠦎 𠦏 𠦐 𠦑 𠦒 𠦓 𠦔 𠦕 𠦖 𠦗 𠦘 𠦙 𠦚 𠦛 𠦜 𠦝 𠦞 𠦟 𠦠 𠦡 𠦢 𠦣 𠦤 𠦥 𠦦 𠦧 𠦨 𠦩 𠦪 𠦫 𠦬 𠦭 𠦮 𠦯 𠦰 𠦱 𠦲 𠦳 𠦴 𠦵 𠦶 𠦷 𠦸 𠦹 𠦺 𠦻 𠦼 𠦽 𠦾 𠦿 𠧀 𠧁 𠧂 𠧃

米、田、十、彳、革、支、戈、尸、穴、力、舟、口、雨、厂、又、牛、皿、彡、羽、羊、弓、歹、小、欠、子、隹、耳、白、骨、立、见、厶、毛、卜、齿、方、黑、殳、儿、彡、气、勹、爪、瓦、走、匚、户、工、止、寸、夂、矢、斤、舌、身

本教材共有十一篇课文。第一课介绍部首知识,让同学们对汉字的部首有一个大体的了解。第二到十一课详细介绍每个部首。每课介绍十个部首。每一课课文的内容大致如下:

1. 部首古字形。对每一个部首,我们列出甲骨文、金文或者小篆的书写形式,使同学们对汉字部首的象形与表义的特点有一个具体形象的了解。
2. 介绍部首的起源及形成。通过对部首的起源和形成的介绍,我们可以让同学们懂得汉字的发展是跟人们对自然界和社会事物的认识以及文化的形成和发展有密切的关系。揭示部首的文化内涵,会有助于同学们对部首进行有意义的记忆。
3. 语言文化故事。因为多数部首来源于独体字,为了增加同学们对该基本字的印象,我们尽可能为每个基本字提供一个含有该字的成语故事、寓言故事、民间故事、传说或别的生动有趣的故事,使同学们能在语境中加深对该基本字的了解和记忆。

本教材的特点在于我们不光介绍部首知识,同时设计了相应的练习让学习者对学到的部首知识进行巩固并学习如何运用该知识去学习汉字的方法,因此本教材配有练习册。针对每一课内容,练习侧重于两个方面:

1. 部首练习。除了第一课以外,每学完一个部首,都有相应的练习。练习的设计采取从单项到综合,从简单到复杂,既对每个新学的部首进行单项练习,也对前面学过的部首进行复习。
2. 部首复习和测验。在学完每篇课文后,学习者可以对部首进行综合练习并做有关测验。综合练习部分将对本课学到的十个部首进行系统地复习。复习完以后,学习者可以通过做测验题来检查自己是否对所学的十个部首已经掌握。教师应该确信学习者在已经掌握了这一课的部首知识的基础上介绍下一课部首知识。

另外,如果学习者需要更进一步的练习,可以访问与本教材配套的部首练习网站:<http://www.uiowa.edu/~chinese> 该网站提供互动式练习并配有图片和音乐,使学习者在轻松愉快的氛围中达到进一步巩固课文中学到的部首知识的目的。

本教材的编写和练习设计遵循认知规律让学习者对部首进行有意义地学习,而不是

死记硬背,从而增进学习效率。本书的最后附有 100 部首检索。检索采用音(拼音)、形(笔画)、义(英文)三种方法,并标出每个部首在课文中的页码,便于教师和学生查找。

我们建议本教材作为汉语课的补充教材使用。每一到两个星期介绍十个部首。部首教学要跟汉字教学紧密结合起来,这样,学习者可以把学到的部首知识应用到汉字学习中。在汉字教学中尽量让学生通过辨认生字中的已知部首并讨论它对学习合体字的义或音的作用来巩固部首知识。久而久之,学生就能自觉地运用部首知识去习得新字词。当然,教师可根据课程的要求灵活使用本教材。

本教材在编写过程中得到了陈正玘先生、Catherine Fillebrown 老师、林佳老师、赵晓媛老师的协助。陈正玘先生为本书设计了插图;Catherine Fillebrown 老师对本教材的英文部分进行了细致地编辑;林佳老师帮助我们完成了部首的检索编排;赵晓媛老师协助完成了本教材初稿版面的技术处理。在此我们表示感谢!

沈禾玲 王平 蔡真慧

2009 春于美国爱荷华城

Preface

Learning 100 High-frequency Radicals is a textbook specifically designed for foreign learners of Chinese. Unlike English or other Indo-European languages, which use Roman letters to phonetically represent words, the written form of Chinese uses strokes to form square block symbols that we refer to as “characters.” While western alphabets use written symbols to represent sounds only, in Chinese the written symbols signify meanings in addition to pronunciation. In other words most characters have obvious connections with the *meanings* they represent. This is a unique feature of the Chinese writing system.

In terms of structure, characters can be classified into two categories—integral characters and compound characters. Integral characters are visually compact representations, often derived from ancient pictographs. They cannot be broken down into two or more meaningful parts, but must be read as a whole. Compound characters consist of at least two or more integral characters, which combine to signify a word different from, but related to, the integral characters.

Radicals were originally integral characters. What does “radical” mean? If we analyze compound characters, we find that many characters with conceptually related meanings contain the same integral character. For example, the compound characters 岩 (cliff), 屿 (islet), 峡 (gorge), and 峰 (summit) all contain the same integral character 山 (mountain). Since 山 gives us information about the meanings of each of these compound characters, we call 山, thus, radicals are root characters. Once we have established a finite set of key radicals, we can then classify all compound characters according to their radicals, and thereby create a reference system to be used in dictionaries. The process of using an index of radicals to classify and look up characters in a dictionary is known as “the radical index method.”

In this textbook, we will introduce 100 high-frequency radicals. The high-frequency

radicals are those that appear most often in compound characters. Learning the high-frequency radicals facilitates the study of the compound characters, similar to the way learning the Roman alphabet facilitates the memorization of English spelling. While radicals usually signify the meanings of compound characters, sometimes they also indicate pronunciation. For instance, the above mentioned character 山 (pronounced as “shān”) indicates the meaning of the compound character 岩, but it also cues the sound for the character 汕 (shàn). Therefore, learning high-frequency radicals can help students learn the pronunciations, meanings, and graphic representations of many compound characters effectively and efficiently.

Each radical's frequency of appearance in this textbook was computed through an analysis of the 9999 character entries listed in the *Modern Chinese Dictionary* (《现代汉语词典》), published by the Commercial Press in 2005. We have made an adjustment based on an analysis of their frequency in cuing the meaning, shape, and sound in compound characters—in other words—their usefulness in terms of decoding and memorizing compound characters. We have also modified the list based on an analysis of the compound characters used in beginning level Chinese textbooks for foreign students. Specifically, 10 radicals (一 | 丿 丶 ㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃ ㇄ ㇅ ㇆ ㇇) were not listed and another 10 (匚 户 工 止 寸 攴 矢 斤 舌 身) were added. Below are the 100 hundred radicals (in order of frequency from high to low) that we will introduce in the textbook:

水、艹、口、木、手、人、金、心、土、月、糸、虫、言、女、竹、火、王、日、石、鱼、山、足、
鸟、犮、辵、衣、犬、目、刀、邑、宀、禾、马、贝、车、阜、示、食、酉、八、页、巾、门、广、大、
米、田、十、彳、革、支、戈、尸、穴、力、舟、口、雨、厂、又、牛、皿、彡、羽、羊、弓、歹、小、
欠、子、隹、耳、白、骨、立、见、ム、毛、卜、齿、方、黑、殳、儿、彡、气、勹、爪、瓦、走、匚、
户、工、止、寸、攴、矢、斤、舌、身

Learning 100 High-frequency Radicals consists of 11 lessons. Lesson 1 gives an overview of the development and use of the radical system, to give students a general understanding of the radical method before they begin work on the 100 radicals individually. Lessons 2-11 present detailed information on the 100 radicals. Each lesson introduces 10 radicals. The

content of each lesson is outlined below:

1. The ancient form of the radical: For each radical, we illustrate the radical as it appeared in its oldest form—in oracle bone inscription, bronze vessel inscription, or small seal style. This will help students understand the form-to-meaning connection in each radical.
2. An account of the origin and development of the radical: In this section, we present an etymological account of the radical. Through this students can observe the connection between Chinese script and Chinese culture. Because they were created by the ancient people, so characters suggest how people in Ancient China understood the natural world. Further, each character's form and meaning evolved along with changes in Chinese society and thought. Therefore, characters are like evolving time capsules. They offer a window into ancient and historic Chinese culture and ideology. Presenting radicals in this meaningful way will help students remember radicals.
3. A linguistic and cultural explanation: As we mentioned earlier that radicals were originally root-integral characters, and most radicals can still stand alone as integral characters in modern Chinese. In this book we provide an idiom, parable, or folk-tale that uses the radical as an integral character. We thereby embed the radical in an entertaining context to facilitate memorization.

In addition to these detailed introductions in the *Learning 100 High-frequency Radicals textbook*, there is also a supplementary workbook which contains a set of exercises for each radical. In these exercises students can practice recognizing radicals within compound characters and apply their new radical knowledge to the task of learning new compound characters. The workbook features two types of exercises:

1. Individual radical exercises: For each radical, we provide a set of corresponding exercises—both drills and tasks—to reinforce new knowledge. These exercises help students develop the skill of breaking down new characters into component radicals for easier memorization. Mastery of this strategy is the ultimate goal of radical study. In addition these exercises recycle previously introduced radicals, to reinforce learning.

The exercises are sequenced according to the pedagogical principle of ascending difficulty.

2. Radical reviews and quizzes: At the end of each lesson we provide a review section to recap the 10 radicals covered in that lesson, and a quiz to assess students' proficiency with the 10 radicals. By analyzing the results of these quizzes instructors can identify the strength and weakness in their students' understanding. It is advised that the instructor make sure that students have attained mastery of old radicals before introducing new ones.

In addition to the exercises in the workbook, there are further exercises on our companion website at <http://www.uiowa.edu/~chinese>. These online exercises are interactive and accompanied by pictures and music. Here students can further explore radicals according to their own needs and interests.

This textbook has been designed in accordance with current cognitive theories on the learning of Chinese characters, which demonstrate that radical learning is most effective when lessons are interesting meaningful. At the end of this book, we provide three indexes of the 100 radicals introduced in the book, one organized by pronunciation (using *pinyin* phonetic transcriptions), one by stroke count, and one by English translation. In each index the page number of each radical is recorded so that they can be easily located in this book.

We suggest that this textbook be used as a supplemental material to a regular Chinese textbook. It is the best to introduce 10 radicals in every one or two-week period so that students have enough time to digest them. We further suggest that radical instruction be integrated with character learning; thus, learners can apply the learned radical knowledge to learning new characters. When introducing new characters of a given lesson, we should try our best to have students identify the known radicals in the new characters and discuss their roles in learning the meaning or sound of the new characters. This kind of practice, for a long run, will not only reinforce the radical knowledge students have learned but also help learners gain automaticity of using radicals knowledge in learning new characters.

During the course of writing this textbook, we received help and assistance from the

following individuals: Chen Zhengxuan, Catherine Fillebrown, Lin Jia, and Zhao Xiaoyuan. Chen Zhengxuan designed illustrations for the book; Catherine Fillebrown meticulously edited and proofread the English text of this book. Lin Jia helped us with the indexes. Zhao Xiaoyuan assisted with the technical formatting of the manuscript. We would like to take this opportunity to express our deep appreciation to these individuals for their work.

Helen H. Shen, Ping Wang, and Chen-Hui Tsai

Iowa City, U.S.A., Spring 2009

目 录

第一课	汉字部首知识	1
第二课	水、艹、口、木、手、人、金、心、土、月	17
第三课	糸、虫、言、女、竹、火、王、日、石、鱼	37
第四课	山、足、鸟、疒、辵、衣、犬、目、刀、邑	57
第五课	宀、禾、马、贝、车、阜、示、食、酉、八	77
第六课	页、巾、门、广、大、米、田、十、彳、革	96
第七课	支、戈、尸、穴、力、舟、口、雨、厂、又	115
第八课	牛、皿、欠、羽、羊、弓、彡、小、欠、子	133
第九课	隹、耳、白、骨、立、见、厶、毛、卜、齿	152
第十课	方、黑、殳、儿、乡、气、勹、爪、瓦、走	172
第十一课	匚、户、工、止、寸、攴、矢、斤、舌、身	191

附录

拼音检索	211
英文检索	215
笔画检索	220

Table of Contents

Lesson 1	Basic Knowledge of Chinese Radicals	1
Lesson 2	水、艹、口、木、手、人、金、心、土、月	17
Lesson 3	糸、虫、言、女、竹、火、王、日、石、鱼	37
Lesson 4	山、足、鸟、疒、辵、衣、犬、目、刀、邑	57
Lesson 5	宀、禾、马、贝、车、阜、示、食、酉、八	77
Lesson 6	页、巾、门、广、大、米、田、十、彳、革	96
Lesson 7	支、戈、尸、穴、力、舟、口、雨、厂、又	115
Lesson 8	牛、皿、欠、羽、羊、弓、歹、小、欠、子	133
Lesson 9	隹、耳、白、骨、立、见、厶、毛、卜、齿	152
Lesson 10	方、黑、殳、儿、乡、气、勹、爪、瓦、走	172
Lesson 11	匚、户、工、止、寸、攴、矢、斤、舌、身	191

Appendices

Pinyin index	211
English index	215
Strokes index	220

第一课 汉字部首知识

部首概念的产生 The Origin of the Radical



汉字部首起源于基本字,那么是谁最先提出部首这个概念的呢?中国东汉时期的一个学者许慎(约公元 65—122 年)把 9353 个汉字按字体形状分类,把含有相同结构成分且意义有关联的合体字归为一类,这样,9353 被分成 540 类,其中每类汉字中结构相同的部分—也称为基本字,放在这一类字的首位,并称它为部首。利用这 540 个部首,许慎编著了中国第一部篆书字典叫《说文解字》。后来南朝的学者顾野王(519—581)根据许慎的方法,编写了中国第一部楷书字典叫《玉篇》,共有部首 542 部。到了明代,梅膺祚编了一本字典叫《字汇》(1615)把部首精简到 214。后来,清代的张玉书、陈廷敬等编了《康熙字典》(1710)也用 214 部首。上海汉语大词典出版社出版的《标准汉语字典》(2000)收了 201 部首。2005 年 7 月商务印书馆出版的《现代汉语词典》也为 201 部。因此,我们现在学习部首一般都学 201 个部首。我们在本书中,将介绍其中 100 个。

Originally, radicals were root characters. How did these root characters become radicals, and who invented the term “radical?” In the Eastern Han dynasty, a scholar named Xu Shen (65—122) classified 9,353 compound characters into 540 categories based on the common root characters they contained. He grouped together characters containing the same root



character and wrote their common root character as their heading. Xu Shen referred to this common root character as a “radical.” Xu Shen identified 540 radicals. His groundbreaking method—classifying characters based on their shared component, allowed Xu Shen to compile the first Chinese dictionary. It was written in small Seal Script and titled *Shuowen Jiezi* (Character and Word Annotations). Later, in the Southern Dynasty, another scholar, named Gu Yewang (519—581), compiled another character dictionary using Xu Shen’s method. This dictionary was named *Yu Pian* (*Jade Articles*) and was written in Regular Script listing 542 radicals. Mei Yingzuo, a scholar in the Ming Dynasty, compiled a dictionary named *Zihui* (Collection of Characters) published in 1615 and reduced the number of radicals to 214. The *Kangxi Character Dictionary*, published in 1710 retained the 214 radicals. Modern Chinese Linguists further analyzed the 214 radicals and made a further deduction from 214 to 201. This 201 radical system is what is used today in prominent Chinese dictionaries, such as the *Biaozhu Hanyu Zidian* (Standard Chinese Character Dictionary), published by The Modern Chinese Dictionary Publishing House in 2000. Another commonly used dictionary, the *Xiandai Hanyu Cidian* (Modern Chinese Dictionary) published by the Commercial Press in 2005, also uses the 201 radical system. In this textbook, we introduce 100 of the 201 radicals.

部首形体的演变

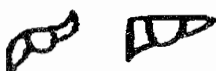
The Evolution of Written Structure of Radicals



现在我们使用的部首很多都起源于古代,但是,古代的写法和现代有着很大的差别,因为在不同历史阶段汉字书写形式发生了变化,因此,部首的书写形式也起了变化。汉字部首的形体演变大致可以分为五个阶段:甲骨文、金文、小篆、隶书、楷书。从甲骨文到小篆,我们称它为古文字阶段,虽然部首的形体有变化,但是依然保存着象形特点。隶书、楷书,我们称它为今文字阶段,部首的笔画已不再是曲线形,而是成为直线形,因此现代汉字已不

再是象形文字,而是用笔画组合的抽象符号。下面是部首“目”从甲骨文到楷书的形体变化过程:

Although many radicals used in modern Chinese originated in ancient China, the written forms of the modern radicals differ dramatically from their ancient forms. This is because throughout different stages of Chinese history the entire Chinese writing system has undergone great stylistic changes. From its conception to today the Chinese writing system, along with the radicals contained within, has passed through five different writing styles: Oracle bone inscription, bronze vessel inscription, seal script, official style, and regular style. The first three styles, Oracle bone inscription, bronze vessel inscription, and seal script are classified together as ancient scripts because, although they are very different in appearance, they still retain more pictographic forms. We refer to the official and regular styles as modern scripts as the strokes in these two styles are no longer curved. The straightened strokes of the modern scripts diminish the pictographic characteristics of the characters. Therefore, modern Chinese script is not a pictographic writing system, rather, it is a system of abstract symbols composed of strokes. Consider, for example, the historical evolution of the radical 目:

甲骨文 Oracle Bone Inscription: 

金文 Bronze Vessel Inscription: 

小篆 Small Seal Style: 

隶书 Official Style: 

楷书 Regular Style: 目

While the original character looked like a picture of an eye, the pictograph became more and more stylized and abstract, until a reader could no longer guess its meaning.

部首的结构特点 The Physical feature of Ancient Radicals



因为汉字是一种表意文字，一部分的部首字最初的形体都是仿照实物画出来的，人们用这些形状来表示部首所代表的意义。我们称它们为象形字，也就是部首的写法象它所表达的物体的形体。上面提到的“目”是按眼睛的形状写下来的，下面的“犬”也是。如果你看了下面的两张图片，你就会知道“犬”就是“狗”，“犬”字是按“狗”的形状画的。

Chinese writing originated from pictographs. If we track down the origins of each radical, we will find that they began as pictures of physical things—people, animals, and objects. This is the reason that many Chinese characters have strong meaning-script correspondence. Consider, for example, the oracle bone inscription for the radical 目 mentioned above. We can guess it's meaning is “eye” just by looking at it. The two pictures below are another example. They are the origins of the radical 犬. After viewing the following two pictures, you can probably guess the meaning of the radical 犬, which is *dog*.



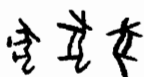
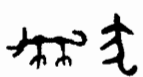
(内蒙古阴山岩画·犬)
The rock painting of the Yin
Mountain in Inner Mongolia



(金文·犬)
Bronze vessel inscription

下面是部首“犬”从甲骨文到楷书的字形变化：

The evolution of the radical 犬 is illustrated below:

甲骨文： 金文： 小篆：

隶书：犬

楷书：犬

“犬”字，甲骨文描成一只头朝上，尾巴朝下，腿朝左的狗。因为狗的尾巴是上卷的，金文就更突出了这一可以区别于其他动物的特点，下部的尾巴更明显地向右上翘起，所以是个象形字。到小篆以后，就逐渐失去了狗的形象。

如果我们能够知道一个部首的古文字形体以及它在历史上的变化，就能很容易地记住这个部首的字形和它代表的意义。如部首“山”的古文字形像山峰；水的古文字形像流水；日的古文字形像太阳；人的古文字形像侧立的人。

In the oracle bone inscriptions, we can tell that the top portion of the symbol is the head of the dog and the bottom portion is the tail. The two lines on the left are the legs. Just as real dogs' tails tend to curl, their representation in oracle bone inscription features a curved tail. The curl is even more exaggerated in the bronze inscriptions. In the small seal and regular script styles however, the pictographic nature of the characters is obscured and we can no longer guess that 犬 means dog. If, however, we equip ourselves with the knowledge of evolution of radical forms from their conception to today, it will be much easier for us to memorize the shape and meaning of their contemporary forms. Here are a few more examples: the radical 山 (*mountain*) is derived from the pictograph  which depicts three mountain peaks; the radical 水 (*water*) in its ancient pictographic form  resembles flowing water; the radical 日 means sun and its pictographic form  looks like a round sun; and the radical 人 means *person* and its pictographic form  looks like a profile of a person.

部首的变体 Alternative Versions of Radicals



部首成为合体字的部件时,由于在整个汉字中所处的位置不同,常常会有不同的写法。我们把在组合汉字过程中没有发生形体变化的部首叫作“正体部首”,发生变化的部首叫作“变体部首”。正体部首和变体部首之间的关系只是在形体上有差别,读音和意义完全相同。例如“犬”是正体部首,构成的汉字如“哭”;“犛”是“犬”的变体部首,构成的汉字如“狗”。“心”是正体部首,构成的汉字如“思”;“忄”和“小”是“心”的变体部首,构成的汉字如“情”和“慕”。本书选用的 100 个汉字部首,首先介绍的是正体,然后将变体用括弧()标出。如:水(氵 氷)。

20 世纪 50 年代,中国政府推行简化字。随着汉字的简化,有些部首也相应被简化了,比如,合体字“餅”的简体形式是“饼”。我们可以看到左边的部首“食”在简体字中写成了“饣”。正体部首的简体形式,我们也在括弧中标出。

When radicals are used to form a compound character, they can be placed in different positions relative to other components in the compound—such as above, below, or to the left or right side of the other components in the compound. In order to fit into the square block shape of contemporary compound characters the radical often is given an alternate, truncated version. We call these condensed forms “alternate versions” of the radical, while characters that retain their original shape are called “regular versions.” The regular and alternative versions of a radical differ in shape but not in the meaning and sound it represents. For example, the alternative version for 犬 is 犛. In the character 哭 the radical 犬 appears in its regular version, but in the character 狗 it appears in its alternate version, standing on the left side of the compound character. The regular version of the radical 心—heart—is



used in its “regular version” in compound characters such as 思. But 心 also has two alternative versions—忄 and 小, which are used in compound characters like 情 and 慕. In this textbook, we will introduce both the regular and alternative versions of each radical. The alternative versions are indicated with parentheses. Of course, some radicals do not have alternative versions.

In the 1950s, the government of the Peoples Republic of China, in an attempt to expand literacy, promoted the use of a more simplified form of Chinese characters. More than two thousand high-frequency characters have been simplified—redesigned to be written with far fewer strokes. Just as many integral characters were simplified, many radicals were also transformed into simpler forms. To cite an example, the simplified version of the compound character 餅 is 饼. The radical 食 in the left part of character is written as 饣 in the simplified system. In this textbook, we indicate the simplified versions of radicals in parentheses.

部首的组合

The Creation of New Radicals Based on Existing Radicals



古人经常在象形部首的基础上,加上笔画,创造另一部首来表示与这个部首有联系的另一个事物或另一概念,比如“甘”𠂔是在象形部首“口”𠂔中加一小横,表示用舌头感觉到的甜味。“立”𠂔是在象形部首“大”𡗗下加一横,表示人的站立。这类在原部首基础上加笔画创造出来的新部首,严格地说,他们已不完全是象形字,而是有指事的性质。

In ancient times some radicals were created by modifying existing radicals. For example, the radical 甘 𠂔, which means *sweet*, was created by adding a horizontal stroke to the existing radical 口 𠂔 (mouth). This added stroke is supposed to indicate the tongue—the organ that senses sweetness. Another example is 立 𠂔, which means *to stand*. This radical was created by adding another horizontal stroke underneath the radical 大 𡗗 (big) to represent a person standing on the ground. Strictly speaking, radicals of this type are no

longer pure pictographs. They are ideographs-graphic symbols that represent abstract ideas, often by portraying a single concrete event to suggest the abstract idea.

部首在汉字中的位置 The Position of Radicals in compound characters



部首在合体字中可以处在各种位置，下面是常见的部首在合体字中的位置：

1. 部首在左边。例如：氵→江。
2. 部首在右边。例如：攵→政。
3. 部首在中间。例如：口→哀。
4. 部首在上边。例如：宀→室。
5. 部首在下边。例如：土→壑。
6. 部首在外边。例如：门→闯。

在学合体字时，先找出已经学过的部首，不仅仅可以帮助我们很快记住合体字的字形，而且可以帮助我们记住字义。如果，一个部首在合体字中是表示字音，那么，我们还可以利用这个部首来记住合体字的发音。

As stated above, radicals can appear in several different positions within a compound character. Below we have listed the common positions for radicals in compound characters:

1. The left side of a compound character: 氵→江。
2. The right side of a compound character: 攵→政。
3. The middle of a compound character: 口→哀。
4. The top of a compound character: 宀→室。
5. The bottom of a compound character: 土→壑。
6. Half-encircling another radical or integral character: 门→闯。

When you learn a new compound character, identifying familiar radicals contained within will help you memorize both the form and the meaning of the new character. Sometimes radicals also serve as phonetic cues for a compound character—indicating that the compound character has a pronunciation similar to the radical. In these cases identifying the radical will also help you learn the pronunciation of the compound character.

部首与独体字、合体字的关系 The Connections among Radicals, Integral Characters, and Compound Characters



我们已经知道部首是组成合体字的单位。学了部首以后,看到一个合体字,就不会认为合体字是一堆笔画的组合,而是部首的组合。例如:“古”字,我们说是由“十”和“口”组成的,很少说是由几横几竖或几笔组成的。部首与汉字的关系大致有如下几种情况:

- 一是,部首作为独体字,即部首是一个汉字。例如:水。
- 二是,部首加笔画组成另一个独体字。如我们前面提到的“甘”。
- 三是,相同的部首组成一个合体字。例如:木 → 林、森。
- 四是,不同的部首组成一个合体字。例如:“心”跟“田”→思;“忄”跟“青”→情。

五是,部首和独体字或其他部件组成一个合体字。例如:“氵”跟“可”→河。

我们知道了部首与合体字的关系,在学习一个新的合体字时,可以先分析一下这个合体字,想一想是由几个部首组成的,是怎么组成的,那样就能减轻我们记忆的负担,有效地记住合体字。

Radicals are the orthographic units that compose compound characters. Once we have learned enough high frequency radicals, compound characters will no longer seem to be a collection of random strokes. Rather, we will recognize characters as meaningful combinations of radicals. For instance,

after learning basic radicals, when we see the character 古 (ancient), we can tell that it is formed by two radicals, 十 and 口. The structural relationships among radicals, integral characters, and compound characters can be summarized as follows:

1. Radicals are integral characters: 水
2. Some radicals are derived from other radicals: 口 → 甘
3. Duplicated radicals can be combined to form compound characters:
木 → 林、森
4. Different radicals can be combined to form compound characters: 心 plus 田 → 思, 忄 plus 青 → 情
5. Radicals can be combined with other integral characters that are not radicals to form a compound characters: Radical 氵 plus integral character 可 to form 河。

Knowing this, when we come across a new compound character we should analyze the structure of the new compound and identify: how many radicals there are in the compound, which radicals they are, and in which positions they are placed. By analyzing the character into meaningful chunks, we greatly reduce the burden on our working memory and make learning more effective.

部首的意义分类 Classifying Radicals by Their Meanings



前面我们提到部首有 201 部,如果我们要记住所有的部首,最好的方法是对部首按照它们所代表的意义进行分类,根据对 201 个部首的起源进行分析,大部分的部首可以被分类,下面列举的仅仅是几个分类的例子:

In the "Preface" section, we mentioned there are a total of 201 radicals in modern Chinese. The best way to memorize all 201 radicals is to organize these radicals into groups according to common meanings. The table below presents one way to organize major radicals:



类别 Category	部首 Radicals				
人体 human body	人 (rén) person	大 (dà) big	子 (zǐ) boy	女 (nǚ) female	身 (shēn) body
动物 Animals	犬 (quǎn) dog	牛 (niú) ox	马 (mǎ) horse	羊 (yáng) goat	豕 (shǐ)
植物 Plants	禾 (hé) grain	艹 (cǎo) grass	木 (mù) tree	米 (mǐ) rice	竹 (zhú) bamboo
器物 Objects	贝 (bèi) sea shell	皿 (mǐn) container	酉 (yǒu) alcohol	刀 (dāo) knife	弓 (gōng) bow
天文 Astronomy	日 (rì) sun	月 (yuè) moon			
地理 Geography	山 (shān) mountain	土 (tǔ) soil; earth	川 (chuān) river; plain		

在学习时,同学们最好自己对部首进行意义分类,每学一个新部首,把它列入一个意义类,等学完全部部首时,这些部首就会登记在每个同学各自的认知系统中,变成你们自己的知识体系。

As the number of radicals you have learned increases, you will be able to reclassify radicals into new meaningful categories. The more you reorganize and inter-relate radicals, the better your recall of radical meanings will become. This, turn, will facilitate compound character memorization.

部首的基本义和引申义 The basic and extended meanings of a radical



每个部首起源时都代表一个相应的事物,部首所代表的意义,我们称它为基本义。随着语言的发展,一个部首逐渐有了有好几个意义,后来产生的这些意义都与基本义有关联,我们称它为引申义。例如“火”是汉字的常用部首,“火”的基本义是火焰。用“火”部首组成的合体字与“火”存在着意义上

的密切联系。比如“煌”是光辉、“燥”是被火烘了以后那种“干”的感觉。“火”作为一个独体字,可以跟许多其他字组合表示与“火”不同但是有关联或相似的一些事物,看下面一些例子:

(跟火一样的)颜色:火红的太阳

热闹:红火

旺盛:火红的青春

发炎:上火

发怒:动火

当我们了解了部首的基本义与引申义的关系以后,我们知道学习部首的基本义,不仅能帮助我们学习部首的引申义,可以让我们很快记住那些含有相同部首的合体字的字义,并且帮助我们记住那些用部首作为基本字所组成的词或词组的意思。

Originally, each radical was an integral character created to represent only one meaning. We refer to the original meaning of a radical as its “basic meaning.” As Chinese language and writing developed, each radical’s meaning expanded to represent several different concepts. This means that a single radical may have several different meanings, though they are all related to the same basic meaning. We refer to the meanings that the radical accrued over time as “extended meanings.”

The original and extended meanings of the integral character 火 (fire) illustrate this phenomenon. When the integral character 火 is combined with other characters it forms simple words or phrases that represent meanings that are sometimes conceptually distant from fire. Such as:

火红的太阳 (the sun with fire color)

红火 (flourishing)

火红的青春 (lively youth)

上火 (inflammation)

动火 (get angry)

When combined with other characters 火's original meaning expands to include the color of fire, success, liveliness, illness, and anger. The same diffusion of meaning occurs with the radical fire, when combined with another component to form a compound character. For example, the compound character 煌, with the radical 火, means glory, while the character 燥 means dry (after being baked in a fire). So 火 takes on the extended meanings of glory and dryness.

To effectively use radicals in the task of memorizing new characters, we need to know both the radical's basic meaning as well as its extended meanings. To grasp a radical's extended meanings it is very helpful to consider examples of compound characters that use that radical, or phrases in which the radical is used as integral character, just as we have done above with 火.

部首与社会文化的关系

Radicals and Their Relation to the Chinese Culture and Society



语言的发展是随着社会和文化的发展而发展的,自然,中国古人的的人生观、宇宙观、宗教信仰、文学艺术、风土人情等都会在汉字的创造中有所反映。部首作为最古老的汉字,反映着当时中国社会和文化。比如:“女”字,甲骨文写作,像一个人的两只手相交跪在地上,从这个字形可以看到中国古代妇女常用的体态姿势。也许在那个时候妇女经常在家里跪着干活,也可能女人在那时候的社会地位已经不如男人那么高,跪着表示处在一种卑下的地位。再如部首“父”最初的形状像一只手抓住一个形状尖利的石头,反映出当时的男人是在外面用石头打击动物,获取食物,或是用石头打击敌人,保护部落的安全,从这个部首的形状,我们还可以推知,当时也许处在石器时代。因此学习部首不仅可以帮助我们学汉字,而且还可以帮助我们学



习中国的文化和历史。

读了这一课，大家可能对部首知识以及为什么要学习部首有一个大致的了解。我们希望在学完所有课文以后，同学们能掌握 100 高频率部首并自觉运用部首知识去学习新的汉字。

我们邀请你与部首交朋友！

While the Chinese language developed along with Chinese society and culture, the characters, like graphic time-capsules, still reflect the lifestyle, ideology, and beliefs of the ancient Chinese' creators. They also offer insight into areas of Chinese culture such as fine arts, literature, customs and conventions. This is especially true for radicals, which were derived from the oldest integral characters. For example, radical 女, is written as  in oracle bone inscription. It is the image of a woman kneeling down with two hands crossed. From this pictograph, we can guess that in ancient China it may have been common for women to spend most of their time kneeling as they did domestic chores. Or perhaps the posture indicates an inferior status, and from this we can assume that women's social status in ancient China was very low.

The radical 父 is another example. Its ancient pictographic form, , looks like a man holding a stone axe. We can imagine that males were often working outdoors and using tools like axes to catch animals, harvest food, or attack enemies in order to protect their tribe. We could also infer that China was in the Stone Age at the time of the character's inception. Because characters capture the unique way ancient Chinese conceptualized their world, learning radicals not only helps us learn Chinese characters, but also introduces us to Chinese culture and history as well.

By now, we hope that you have had a general understanding of why students of Chinese need to learn radicals. We certainly hope that after completing all of the lessons in this book, you will have a deep understanding of the 100 high-frequency radicals and that you will use your radical knowledge to acquire more Chinese characters.

We hope you enjoy your exploration of Chinese radicals!

练习
Exercises



一、讨论 Discussion

1. 为什么我们称最初的部首是象形字？请举例回答这个问题。

Why do we refer to the earliest radicals as pictographs?

2. 部首最早是谁总结出来的？现代汉字部首有多少个？Who created the concept of the radical? How many radicals are there in modern Chinese?

3. 学部首为什么能帮助我们学习汉字？Why does studying radicals help us learn Chinese characters?

二、表一列出 100 个部首，它们的次序是根据部首在合体字中出现的频率排列的，也就是说第一个部首“水”在合体字中出现的次数最多。请根据表一，回答问题。Table 1 lists 100 high frequency radicals. Their order is based on their frequency rates—how frequently these radicals appeared in the compound characters. That is, the radical 水 has the highest frequency among all radicals. Please answer the questions below based on Table 1.

1. 说说部首“目”和“人”的频率哪个高？哪个对学习合体字更有帮助？

Which radical “目” or “人,” appears more frequently? Which of the two will help us learn more compound characters?

2. 从下一页的部首表(表一)找出至少三个部首是在第一课中提到的，说说这三个部首的意思。Please find at least three radicals mentioned in this lesson from Table 1 (next page) and explain their meaning.

表 1 (Table 1) 按频率排列的 100 部首
(100 radicals according to their frequency)

编号	拼音	部首	编号	拼音	部首	编号	拼音	部首	编号	拼音	部首
1	shuǐ	水(氵 氷)	26	yī	衣(衤)	51	pū	支(攴)	76	jiàn	见(見)
2	cǎo	艹(艸)	27	quǎn	犬(犴)	52	gē	戈	77	sī	厶
3	kǒu	口	28	mù	目	53	shī	尸	78	máo	毛
4	mù	木(朩)	29	dāo	刀(刂 ㄅ)	54	xuè	穴	79	bǔ	卜
5	shǒu	手(扌 扌)	30	yì	邑(阝 在左)	55	lì	力	80	chǐ	齿(齒)
6	rén	人(亻 入)	31	mián	宀	56	zhōu	舟	81	fāng	方
7	jīn	金(钅)	32	hé	禾	57	wéi	口	82	hēi	黑
8	xīn	心(忄 小)	33	mǎ	马(馬)	58	yǔ	雨	83	shū	尗
9	tǔ	土(土)	34	bèi	贝(貝)	59	hǎn	厂	84	rén	儿
10	yuè	月(月)	35	chē	车(車)	60	yǒu	又	85	shān	彡
11	mì	糸(纟)	36	fù	阜(阬 在右)	61	niú	牛(牜 𠂇)	86	qì	气
12	chóng	虫	37	shì	示(礻)	62	mǐn	皿	87	bāo	勹
13	yán	言(讠)	38	shí	食(饣)	63	bīng	冫	88	zhǎo	爪(ㄩ)
14	nǚ	女	39	yǒu	酉	64	yǔ	羽	89	wǎ	瓦
15	zhú	竹(𥵹)	40	bā	八(ㄨ)	65	yáng	羊	90	zǒu	走
16	huǒ	火(灬)	41	xié yè	页(頁)	66	gōng	弓	91	fāng	匚
17	wáng yù	王(玉)	42	jīn	巾	67	è	歹(𠂇)	92	hù	户
18	rì	日(日 日)	43	mén	门(門)	68	dǎi	小(㇇)	93	gōng	工
19	shí	石	44	yǎn	广	69	qiàn	欠	94	zhǐ	止
20	yú	鱼(魚)	45	guǎng	大	70	zǐ	子	95	cùn	寸
21	shān	山	46	mǐ	米	71	zhuī	隹	96	zhī	攴
22	zú	足(足)	47	tián	田	72	ěr	耳	97	shǐ	矢
23	niǎo	鸟(鳥)	48	shí	十	73	bái	白	98	jīn	斤
24	nè	疒	49	chì	彳	74	gǔ	骨	99	shé	舌
25	chuò	辵(辵)	50	gé	革	75	lì	立	100	shēn	身

第二课 水、艹、口、木、手、人、金、心、土、月

1. 水[氵 𣶒] (shuǐ) 部 Water



古字形 𣶒

“水”是象形字，古文字的“水”始终保持着它的象形性：弯曲有波纹，像水流的形状。作为部首，“水”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“氵”，俗称“三点水”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“水”。水部的字多与水有关，例如“汉语”的“汉”字，本是中国古代一条著名的河流名称，刘邦做皇帝后立国号为“汉”。汉朝是中国历史上一个统治时间很长的统一王朝，影响深远。现在所说的“汉族”、“汉语”、“汉字”之“汉”都是由此而来。

Ancient form 𣶒

水 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 水 looks like a flowing river. When 水 is used as a radical standing on the left of a compound character, it is written as 氵. The character 汉 (hàn) has the 氵 radical, because 汉 is name of an ancient river—The Han River. In ancient times, Chinese people lived along the Han River, so today Chinese people are also known as the Han. The first ruler to unite China and maintain long-term hegemony called his dynasty The Han Dynasty. Han people are known as 汉族 (Hànzú; Han Nation) and their language is referred as 汉语 (Hànyǔ; Chinese).

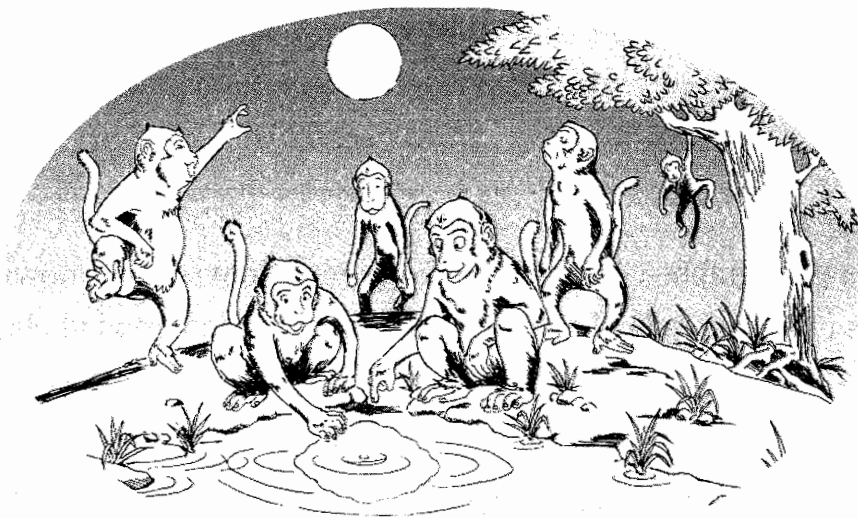


故事 Story

1. 水中捞月 (Shuǐ zhōng lāo yuè) 水 water 中 in 捞 catch 月 the moon



Once upon a time, there was a group of monkeys. One night they were sitting in a big tree admiring the moon. One monkey asked: "How can we capture the moon?" Another monkey answered "Perhaps we need to climb to the top of a mountain." All of the monkeys agreed and so they climbed up a mountain. But, when they reached the top they were disappointed to find that the moon was still high in the sky, well beyond their reach. Later, after they descended the mountain, one monkey saw the reflection of the moon on the surface of a nearby lake: "Look, the moon is in the water! We can get it!" All the monkeys were excited; again they tried to catch the moon, and again were unable to reach it. Finally, they all jumped into the water, and the moon was broken by the ripples. 水中捞月 is an allegory for people who make impractical or vain efforts. This is similar to the English expression: crying for moon.



2. 艹[艹](cǎo) 部 Grass



古字形 艹

“艹”是象形字，古文字像一棵棵生长茂盛的青草。“艹”只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“艹”通常位于汉字的上面，写作“艹”，俗称“草字头”。艹部的字多数是名词，一般用于指称除树木以外的植物，例如，花，芽。

Ancient form 艹

艹 [艹] is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like two stalks of grass with sprouting leaves. 艹 means grass. In modern Chinese, 艹 is no longer an independent character. It is used only as radical in compound characters. When it appears at the top of a compound, it is written as 艹. Characters containing the 艹 radical often have meanings related to grass or plants, such as 花 (huā; flower) and 芽 (yá; sprout).



故事 Story

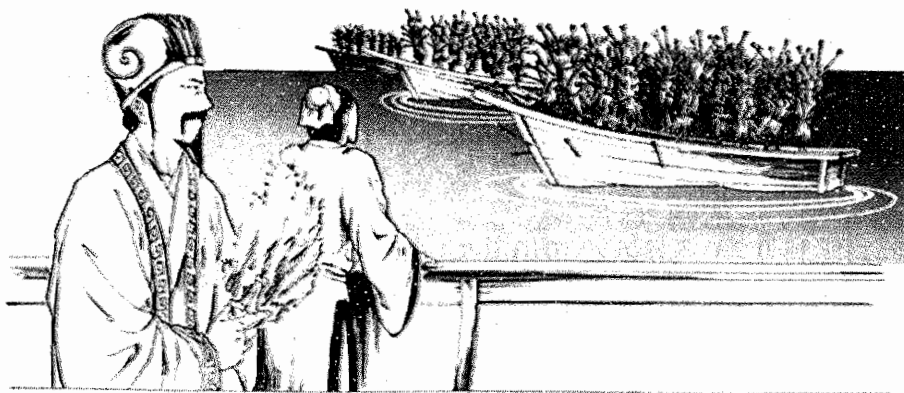
2. 草船借箭 (Cǎo chuán jiè jiàn) 草 straw 船 boat 借 borrow 箭 arrows



草船借箭 is from a story from the Chinese novel *The Three Kingdoms*. Cao Cao—King of the Wei State, commanded his army to conquer the rival state of Wu. At that time, General Zhou Yu, Military Councilor Zhuge Liang, and State Chancellor Lu Su all worked for Sun Quan, the King of Wu. They needed to work together to defeat Cao Cao's army. Zhou Yu envied Zhuge

Liang's outstanding abilities and wisdom. So he decided to set Zhuge Liang up to fail. He ordered Zhuge to prepare 100 thousand arrows within three days for his army. Zhou Yu knew it was impossible to produce that many arrows in just three days. If Zhuge could not get the arrows ready, then Zhou Yu could blame him for ruining their chances of winning the battle. In order to ensure Zhuge would fail, he also informed the military carpenters not to provide enough materials for making arrows. To witness Zhuge's failure, Zhou Yu sent Lu Su to help Zhuge. Zhuge was happy to accept Lu Su's help. Together they prepared twenty big boats, and outfitted each with two rows of scarecrows.

Early in the morning of the third day, Zhuge invited Lu to join him in collecting 100 thousand arrows. Lu was very puzzled but accompanied Zhuge to the riverside. It was very foggy that morning. Zhuge asked his soldiers to sail the twenty boats toward the north bank of the river where Cao Cao's army was encamped. When the boats were close to Cao's military fort, Zhuge ordered his soldiers to shout loudly and beat their drums as if they were going to attack Cao's army. Due to the fog, Cao Cao could not tell these scarecrows were not real soldiers. Deceived, he ordered his archers to shoot at the enemy boats. After a while, the fog began to fade, so Zhuge ordered his men to sail the boats back to the south bank. When the boats returned they found more than 100 thousand arrows in the scarecrows. When Lu Su reported the whole story to Zhou Yu, Zhou Yu recognized that Zhuge was a brilliant strategist and accepted that he could never compete with him.



3. 口 (kǒu) 部 Mouth



古字形

“口”是象形字,古文字像人的口形,本义是指人的嘴巴。由此引申为指称人的数量单位,例如“三口之家”。“口”也用来泛指进出的通道,例如“出口”、“入口”等。作为部首,“口”通常位于汉字的左侧,有时位于汉字的下面、中间。口部的字多与口的动作有关,例如“吃”、“喝”、“叫”、“告”、“问”等。

Ancient form

“口” is a pictograph. The ancient form of 口 depicts a person's mouth. Therefore, 口 is also used as measure word for person, such as 三口 (sānkǒu; *a family with three people*). The other meaning of 口 is *gateway* such as in the words 出口 (chūkǒu; *exit*) and 入口 (rùkǒu; *entrance*). As a radical, it usually appears on the left side of a compound. Characters with 口 often have meanings related to the actions of the mouth—verbalizing and consuming. This is exemplified in the characters 吃 (chī; *to eat*), 喝 (hē; *to drink*), 叫 (jiào; *to call*), 告 (gào; *to tell*), and 问 (wèn; *to ask*).



故事 Story

3. 口蜜腹剑 (Kǒu mì fù jiàn)

口 mouth 蜜 honey 腹 stomach 剑 sword



During the Tang Dynasty Emperor Tang Xuanzong appointed Li Linfu as the Head of the Imperial Board of War. Li was knowledgeable, but lacked integrity. He catered to Emperor Tang's wishes and obeyed his every decision, regardless of whether it was a good or bad. In addition, he worked to curry favor with Emperor's family members. Consequently, Emperor Tang trusted him unduly and Li was able to hold on to his high position for 19 years. To his subordinates, however, Li was terrible. He was friendly on the surface, but often attacked them behind their backs. He framed many innocent people for his selfish purposes. Gradually, people saw through his hypocritical nature, and gave him a nickname: 口蜜腹剑—honey on his lips and murder (dagger) in his heart.



4. 木[木](mù) 部 Tree



古字形 𣎵

“木”是象形字，古文字像树木之形：上为树枝，中为树干，下为树根。“木”的本义是指“树木”。作为部首，“木”通常位于汉字的左侧，有时也位于汉字的其他部位。木部的字有的表示树木的种类，例如“松”、“桃”等。有的表示物品的材料，例如“桌”、“床”等。人居住的地方必然草木丰茂，所以“村”字中也有“木”。“集”字本来是指群鸟栖息树上，引申为聚合之意，例如“集资”、“集邮”“汇集”之“集”。

Ancient form 𣎵

木 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 木 looks like a tree. The top section is supposed to be tree branches, the middle section is the trunk, and the lower part represents the roots of the tree. Therefore, 木 means tree or wood. As a radical, 木 is often placed on the left side of a compound, as in 松 (sōng; *pine tree*) and 桃 (táo; *peach tree*). 木 can also appear in other positions within a compound such as 桌 (zhuō; *table*) and 床 (chuáng; *bed*). When we go to a village, we often see trees; therefore, the Chinese character for village is 村 (cūn). Further, trees are often full of birds who have gathered to rest. Thus, the character 集 (jí; *to gather or to collect*) has two radicals: the top one 隹 means bird and the bottom is 木.





故事 Story

4. 草木皆兵 (Cǎo mù jiē bīng) 草 grass 木 tree 皆 all 兵 soldier



草木皆兵 is a story from *The Life of Fu Jian* in the Records volume of *The History of the Jin Dynasty*. During the Eastern Jin Dynasty, King Fu Jian unified northern China as the Qin State. His plan was to take over southern China, which was unified under the Jin State. In 383, he led 900,000 infantry and cavalry troops to assault the Jin State south of the Yangtze River. Unfortunately for Fu Jian, the first attack on the Jin troops was unexpectedly foiled and the Qin soldiers sustained heavy casualties. Many soldiers were in such a great panic that they ran away from the battlefield. Standing on the city wall of the Shouchun City, Fu Jian and his brother Fu Rong saw that, unlike their men, the Jin troops were gallantly arrayed and in high spirits. Even the bushes and trees that surrounded them seemed vibrant, as if they too were armed soldiers. Turning to his brother, Fu Jian sighed, "What a powerful enemy this is!" He deeply regretted that he had taken his enemy too lightly.

The idiom 草木皆兵 means every bush and tree looks like an enemy soldier. It is used to describe a person who is in a state of extreme agitation.



5. 手[扌 𠂇] (shǒu) 部 Hand



古字形 𠂇

“手”是象形字，古文字像手指分开之形。从正面看，古文字的“手”恰好有五个指头。作为部首，“手”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“扌”，俗称“提手旁”；有时位于汉字的上面，写作“𠂇”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“手”，如“拿”。手部的字多和手或手的动作有关，例如“掌”、“打”、“拉”等字。手分工，指称某种擅长的特性，比如，“歌手”之“手”用的就是这个意思。

Ancient form 𠂇

手 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 手 looks like a hand with five fingers. As a radical, 手 is often placed on the left side of a compound, where it's written as 扌. It can also appear on the bottom of a radical. The 手 radical indicates that the character is about something related to hands, such as 掌(zhǎng; *palm*) or actions done by hands such as 打(dǎ; *to hit*) and 拿(ná; *to fetch or to hold*). Hands also have connotations of “useful” and “capable”. A person who can do a lot of things with their hands is competent. Therefore, another meaning of 手 is *a person who is good at a certain profession*. For example, 歌手(gēshǒu; *song hand*) means *singer*.



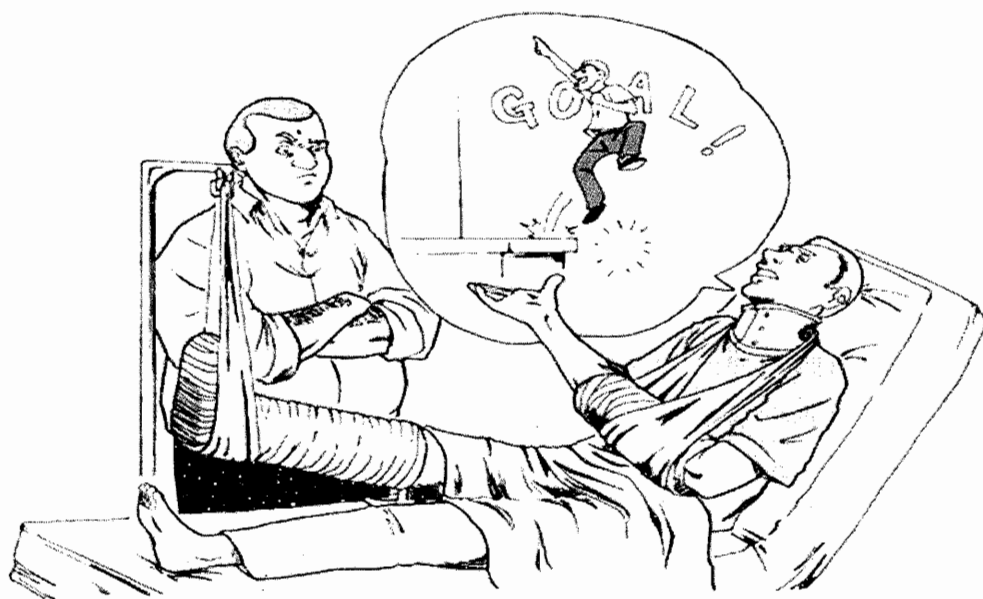
故事 Story

5. 手舞足蹈 (Shǒu wǔ zú dǎo) 手 hands 舞 brandish 足 feet 蹈 tread



This idiom describes the situation when a person is so happy or excited, that he/she moves his/her hands and feet as in a dance.

A news article in the newspaper *East Net* on June 20, 2007 reported that a football fan Mr. Ge was watching a football game between The Netherlands and the Cote D'Ivoire. He could watch the game live by sitting on the railing of his balcony attached to his fourth floor apartment. When the Dutch Team scored, he became so excited that he forgot where he was sitting. He became 手舞足蹈. As a result, he fell off the railing, from the fourth floor to the ground level and fractured his body in four places. It seems too much excitement can occasionally be dangerous.



6. 人 [亻 人](rén) 部 Person



古字形 𠤎

“人”是象形字，古文字像一个侧身站立的人形，并突出了人的臂和腿。作为部首，“人”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“亻”，俗称“单人旁”。例如“他”、“代”。三个“人”组合为“众”，体现了人多的意义。

Ancient form 𠤎

The pictograph 人 means person. The ancient form of 人 looks like a profile of a person. As a radical, it often stands on the left side of a compound, where it is written as 亻, such as in 他 (tā; *him*) and 代 (dài; *generation*). The character 众 (zhòng; *mass*) consists of three people, to signify a lot of people.



故事 Story

6. 郑人买履 (Zhèng rén mǎi lǚ) 郑 Zheng (State) 人 person 买 buy 履 shoes



This is a story about an ancient Chinese man in the Zheng State. The Zheng man wanted to buy a pair of shoes. He went to a shop and found a pair. He liked their color and style. But just as he was about to purchase the shoes, it realized that he had forgotten to bring the measurement he had

郑人买履

taken of his feet. So he hurried to home and got the measurement. Unfortunately, when he came back to the shop, it had already closed. His friend asked him “Why did you need to go home to get the measurement? Why didn’t you just try the shoes on with your own feet instead of going home?” The Zheng Man answered, “I trust my measure before my feet.” The idiom 郑人买履 ridicules those like the Zheng Man who trust doctrine over reality.



7. 金[钅](jīn)部 Gold; Metals



古字形 金 金

有人认为“金”是形声字,从土,今声。金产生于土中,所以从“土”;土旁边的两点表示金属矿物埋藏于土。“金”的本义不是单指黄金,而是金属的通称。在所有的金属中,黄金是最珍贵的。今天我们将货币称为金,如“现金”、“基金”、“奖金”、“美金”等。作为部首,“金”通常位于汉字的左侧,写作“钅”,俗称“金字旁”;有时位于汉字下面,写作“金”。金部的字,有的与金属的名称有关,例如“铜”、“铁”、“铝”等,有的是强调某些器物是由金属材料制作的,例如“锅”、“铲”等。

Ancient form 金 金

Some Chinese scholars consider 金 (jīn; *gold*) a phonetic-semantic compound, because the ancient script of this character is formed with two characters: 今 (jīn) on the top represents the pronunciation of the character and 土 (earth) at the bottom indicates its meaning—a precious metal (gold) that is excavated from the earth. 金's meaning is not limited to gold however. It refers to all metals and anything related to metal. In the past, gold was considered the most precious of all materials and was used as a standard of currency. As a result, 金 also means money, such as in the contemporary Chinese words 现金 (xiànjīn; *cash*), 基金(jījīn; *funds*), and 美金 (měijīn; *US dollars*). As a radical, when it stands on the left of a compound, it is written as 钅. It indicates that the character signifies something related to metal such as 铜 (tóng; *copper*), 铁(tiě; *iron*), and 铝 (lǚ; *aluminium*). It is also used to indicate an object that is typically made out of metal, such as 锅 (guō; *wok*) and 铲(chǎn; *shovel*).



故事 Story

7. 拾金不昧 (Shí jīn bú mèi)

拾 to pick up 金 gold 不 not 昧 to put in a pocket; to hide



拾金不昧 means one does not pocket the money one picks up.

This was a true story happened recently in a city in China. When leaving a taxi one day a company manager left his cell phone in the car. When the taxi driver discovered the cell phone he knew that the phone's owner must be very worried about his lost phone, so he tried to find him. However, the manager had not left his name and address with the driver, so it was only after great effort that the driver finally found him. When the manager saw his lost cell phone, he was touched by the driver's noble efforts and asked for the

driver's home address. That weekend, the manager visited the driver and presented him with an envelope saying that there was just a thank-you note inside. After the Manager left, the driver opened the envelope. To his surprise, in addition to the thank-you note there was also one thousand dollars! This situation generates an ethical question: If the driver accepts the money, can we still consider him to have 拾金不昧? If you were the driver, would you accept the reward money or not?



8. 心[忄 小] (xīn) 部 Heart



古字形



“心”是象形字，古文字像人体之心脏形：中间像心脏，外面像心的包络。心脏是人体中最为重要的器官，心脏停止跳动意味着生命的结束。作为部首，“心”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“忄”，俗称“竖心旁”；有时位于汉字下面，写作“心”或“小”。心部的字大多与人的思想感情有关。在中国古代，人们认为“心”是思维器官，所以，像“思想”、“意念”、“感情”、“思慕”等表示思维和情绪意思的汉字中都有“心”。

Ancient form 𠙴

心 is a pictograph. The ancient form of it looks like a picture of the heart with its four chambers. When 心 is used as a radical on the left side of a compound, it is written as 忄. 心 also occurs at the bottom of a compound, where it is written either as 心 or 小. The heart is one of the most vital organs in the human body. When the heart stops we die. In ancient China, people thought the heart was the source of all mental activity. Therefore, characters with the 心 radical tend to relate to thoughts and feelings such as 思想 (sīxiǎng; *thinking*), 感情(gǎnqíng; *feeling*), and 思慕 (sīmù; *to admire*).

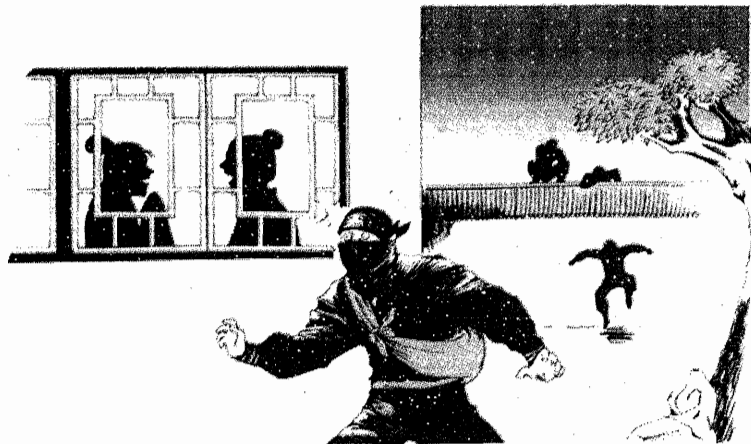


故事 Story

8. 作贼心虚 (Zuò zéi xīn xū) A thief has a guilty conscience
作 to be 贼 thief 心 heart; mind 虚 uneasy



It was a dark night. A head thief led his three henchmen to a household. He climbed over the rear courtyard wall and approached the window of a bedroom. There he overheard a couple conversing within. The husband said: "Is it here yet?" The wife said, "Yes, but only the head is in." The head thief was astonished! How did the couple know that he was the head thief?



He beckoned his three lackeys into the yard with a wave of his hand. One of the thieves slipped around to the backyard. The husband asked, "How many now?" The wife said, "About half." The husband asked, "Shall we catch them now?" The wife said, "Definitely." This conversation scared the thieves away. They thought the couple was talking about them. Actually the couple were talking about the cockroaches inside of the room.

作贼心虚 is used to describe the paranoia of people who have a guilty conscience.

9. 土[土] (tǔ) 部 Soil; Earth



古字形



“土”是象形字,从古文字的构形来看,古人描摹的是一种特定意义的“土”:被竖立起来的土块。作为部首,“土”通常位于汉字的左侧或下面。土部的字可以表示土地的种类、地形、建筑物以及与土有关的事物,例如“地”、“坡”、“疆”、“域”等汉字中都有“土”。“堂”本来是指高大的房子,所以“堂”从土。在中国古代,“堂”并不是一般人能进入的地方,因为国君经常在“堂”上举行祭祀、庆典等重要活动。由于“堂”在建筑上的非同一般,以及它的特殊作用,所以“堂”引申指盛大的样子。成语“堂堂正正”,原形容强大整齐的样子,也形容身材威武,仪表出众。“堂”又引申指同祖父的亲属关系。例如:“堂亲”、“堂兄”。

Ancient form 𡗗

土 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 土 indicates a small lump of clay. As a radical, it often appears either on the left or at the bottom of a compound. The meanings of characters containing 土 are often related to land, topography, the earth, or architecture. Here are some examples: 地 (dì; *land*), 坡 (pō; *slope*), 疆 (jiāng; *border*), and 域 (yù; *area*). 土 appears in the bottom of the character 堂. 堂's original meaning is *big building* where formal religious activities were held. The word 祠堂 (cítáng) means ancestral hall where important family event often took place.



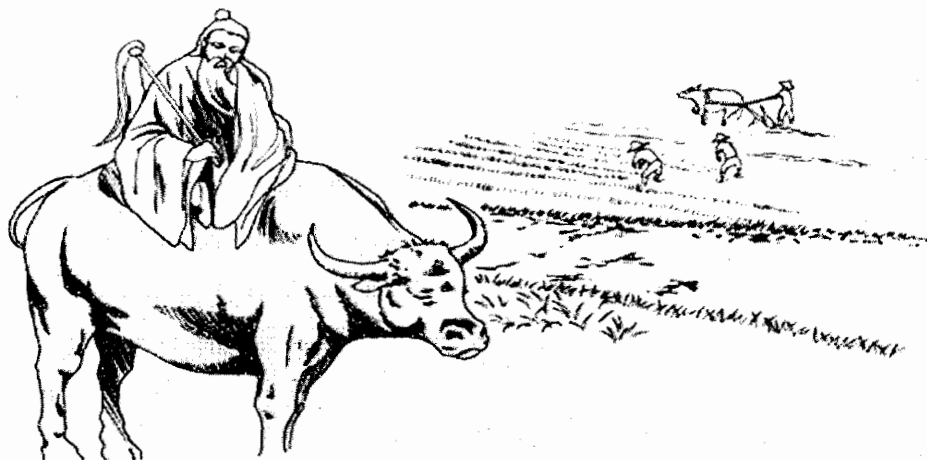
故事 Story

9. 安土乐业 (ān tǔ lè yè) 安 peace 土 homeland 乐 happy 业 career



安土乐业 means living and working in peace and contentment.

During the Warring States Period (BC 722-481), there was a man named Li Er. It was said that he had had grey hair and a long beard from the day he was born; therefore people called him Laozi (old man). Actually this story is not true. Laozi is simply an honorific title the people of that time



gave Li Er because of their great respect for him. Laozi was a great scholar. He was dissatisfied with the society in which he lived because it was rife with war and poverty. He was nostalgic for the golden age of the Sage Kings. He proposed the “small country lower population” idea. He thought if the population of a small country is small, the society will have sufficient resources to support its people, and there would be no need to fight for resources and food. Then people can 安土乐业—live a prosperous and contented life.

10. 月[月](yuè) 部 Moon; Flesh



古字形



“月”是象形字，古文字像上弦月或下弦月之形。本义是指“月亮”，后又引申指时间单位，例如“年月”之“月”。月亮圆缺变化的一个周期，恰恰就是“月”表示时间的长短。所以人们根据月亮的圆缺变化周期确定了“月”这个时间单位。作为部首，“月”有时位于汉字的左侧，有时在汉字的下面。月部的字多与时间和光明有联系，例如“期”、“时”、“明”等字。汉字经过隶变后，“月”和“肉”作为部首用于构字时，合并成一个形体，都写作“月”，所以月部的字又与人体有关，例如“腰”、“肝”、“肠”、“胃”、“背”等都和人体有关，因此，在学习汉字时，我们要对“月”部字进行意义上的区分。

Ancient form 𠄎

The original meaning of the pictograph 月 is moon. Its ancient form looks like a crescent moon. Because the waxing and waning of the moon divides the year into natural cycles, 月 also means *month*. As a radical, it can appear on the left or at the bottom of a compound to indicate meanings related to time and light, such as in the characters 期 (qī; *period*), 时(shí; *time*), and 明 (míng; *bright*). After the simplification of Seal Script in the Qin Dynasty, the character 肉 (*flesh*) was simplified to 月, the exact same character as moon. Therefore, in modern script we see characters such as 腰(yāo; *waist*), 肝(gān; *liver*), 肠(cháng; *intestine*), 胃(wèi; *stomach*), and 背(bèi; *back*) written with 月. In these characters 月 means flesh rather than moon.



故事 Story

10. 月下老人(Yuè xià lǎo rén)The old man under moon 月 moon 下 under 老 old 人 man



This story took place in the Tang Dynasty. One day, a man named Weigu got up very early in the morning. As he stepped out the door to his house, he saw that the moon was still in the sky. He also saw an old man sitting on the stairway that lead up to his house reading a book. When he asked the old man what he was reading the old man replied that it was a book from the immortal realm. Shocked, Weigu asked what kind of job the old man held in the immortal world. The old man replied that he was in charge of human beings' marriages. Weigu was happy to hear this because he was very poor and had thus far been unable to find a beautiful girl to marry him. So Weigu asked the old man where he could find a girl to marry. The old man took him to a market and pointed to a three year old girl in a shabby dress in the distance, "She will be your future bride." Weigu was very

汉

字部首教程

disappointed and doubted the old man's words. But 14 years later, Weigu had become a government official and married a beautiful young girl. Curious, he made inquiries and discovered that his bride was indeed the three-year old girl he saw in the market 14 years ago. As Weigu's story spread, people began to believe that there was a supernatural matchmaker 月下老人 who arranged everyone's marriages.



第三课 糸、虫、言、女、竹、火、王、日、石、鱼

11. 糸[糸 纟](mì) 部 Silk



古字形 

“糸”是象形字，古文字像一束细丝之形，本义是指细丝。“糸”在现代汉语中只用作部首，一般不单独成字。作为部首，“糸”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“纟”（繁体作糸），俗称“绞丝旁”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“糸”。“糸”部的字多与服装、服饰质料有关，比如“线”、“纱”、“绸”，也与颜色等意义有关，比如“红”、“绿”、“紫”。“糸”显然不是一种颜料，为什么表示颜色的汉字中都“糸”呢？这是因为“糸”可以被染成不同的颜色。

Ancient form 

糸 is a pictograph. Its original meaning is silk. The ancient form of 糸 looks like twisted strands of silk yarn. In modern Chinese, 糸 is no longer an independent character. It was replaced by another character 丝. 糸 is now used only as a radical. As a radical, when 糸 appears on the left of a character, it is written as 纟 (糸 in Traditional Characters). Characters with the 糸 radical have meanings related to making clothes or cloth materials such as 线



(xiàn; *thread*), 纱(shā; *gauze*), and 绸(chóu; *silk*). 系 is also used for color words such as 红(hóng; *red*), 绿(lǜ; *green*), and 紫(zǐ; *purple*). Why is 系 used for color words? Because silk is dyed into different colors.

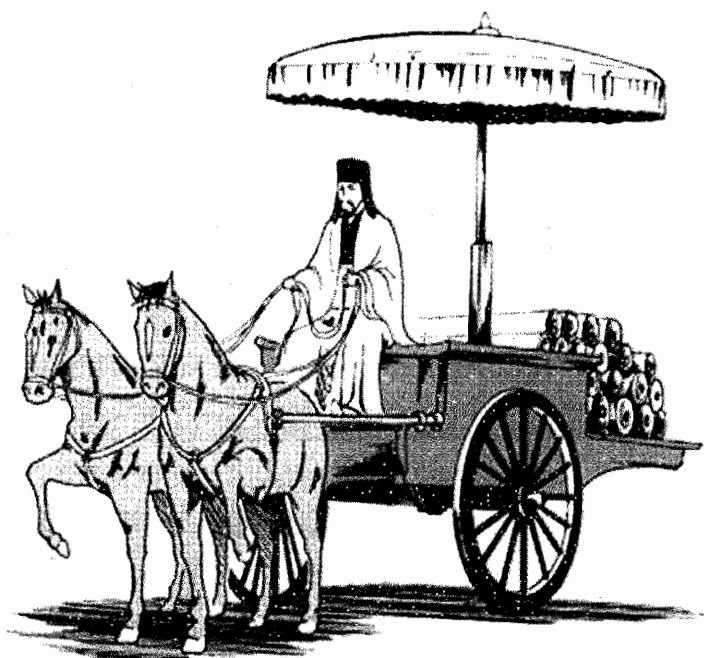


故事 Story

11. 丝绸之路 (Sī chóu zhī lù) 丝绸之路 silk 之 of 路 road The Silk Road



According to archaeological research, China has been producing silk for about four thousand years. In the Han Dynasty (BC 202-AD 8), a diplomat named Zhang Qian opened a land trading route from Asia to Europe. This road started in Xi'an China and went through Gansu, Xinjiang, Western Asia, and ended in the Mediterranean countries. This route later was named as 丝绸之路—the Silk Road. According to legend, in the first century, an emperor of Rome wore a gown made of Chinese silk to watch an opera in a theater. Everyone in the theater was amazed by his luxurious gown. From then on, Chinese silk was a popular commodity among the Roman elite.



12. 虫 (chóng; huǐ) 部 Insects



古字形

“虫”是象形字，古文字像一条盘曲的蛇形：上面是蛇头，下面是蛇的身子。本读 huǐ，即“虺”，是一种毒蛇。后为作为“蟲”的简体字。本义是昆虫的通称，引申泛指动物。作为部首，“虫”通常位于汉字的左侧或下面。虫部的字多与昆虫或动物有关，例如“蜜蜂”、“蝴蝶”以及水生动物“虾”、“蟹”等。

Ancient form

虫 is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like a coiled snake with its head sticking out. The ancient pronunciation of 虫 is *huǐ* in the character 虺 (*huǐ*; a venomous snake). In modern Chinese 虫 is the simplified form of 蟲 (*chóng*), which means insect and its pronunciation is *chóng*. As a radical, 虫 often appears on the left side of compounds, such as in the words 蜜蜂 (*mìfēng*; bee) and 蝴蝶 (*húdié*; butterfly). 虫 is also used for characters signifying small water animals, such as 虾 (*xiā*; shrimp) and 蟹 (*xiè*; crab).





故事 Story

12. 冬虫夏草 (Dōng chóng xià cǎo) 冬 winter 虫 insect 夏 summer 草 grass



冬虫夏草 is the name of a precious traditional Chinese medicine which grows in the area of Tibet. It cures kidney and lung diseases. As its name suggests, this special medicine is a combination of insects and fungus. The formation of this medicine begins in winter, when a certain kind of fungus invades the body of an insect. The fungus grows and absorbs all of the insect's nutrients, eventually killing the bug. During the summer, the fungus grow out from the dead body of the insect into the ground. The medicine is then ready to be harvested. The harvesting period of 冬虫夏草 is only about 15 to 20 days. The complex development and short harvest period of this plant make this medicine rare and precious.



13. 言[讠](yán)部 Speech



古字形 𠮩

“言”是指事字，古文字像口中伸出舌头之形，表示有所言语，本义是指说话，例如“发言”、“言论”之“言”。作为部首，“言”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“讠”，俗称“言字旁”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“言”。言部的字多与言语有关，例如“评论”、“谈话”等。“诚信”两个字中都有“言”。“诚”的本义为真实，不说假话。由“人”和“言”组成的“信”的本义指作为一个人，言语应当真实，引申为信任、相信等意义。

Ancient form 𠮩

言 is not a self-explanatory character. That is, the ancient script of 言 is not a pictograph—a picture of an object or event. Rather it uses symbols to suggest an abstract concept. The ancient form of 言 indicates a tongue sticking out of a mouth. It means “to speak.” As a radical 言 is often placed on the left side of a compound. Its simplified form is 讠. The radical 言 is used for words relating to verbal behaviors, such as 评论 (pínglùn; *to comment*) and 谈话(tánhuà; *to talk*). It is also used for words related to integrity, such as 诚 (chéng; *honest*) and 信 (xìn; *trust*), because integrity is established by keeping your word.



故事 Story

13. 言归于好 (Yán guī yú hǎo)

言 talking (here 言 used as an auxiliary word) 归 restore 于 to
好 good relations



During the Spring and Autumn Period (BC 770—476), princes under the emperor competed to expand their territories and authority, which caused many wars. To stop the endless violence, in 615 BC, Emperor Qi held a meeting in a city called Kuiqiu to discuss forming alliances among the princes. As a result of this meeting, the princes agreed to three things: there would be no more obstructing water resources; no more impeding food circulation, and no more hereditary officials. The Princes put aside their past hostilities and became reconciled. Later, people use 言归于好 to describe any situation in which people stop fighting each other and become friends again.



14. 女(nǚ) 部 Female



古字形

“女”是象形字，古文字像一个敛手跪着的女人的形象。“女”的本义是女性、女人。作为部首，“女”通常位于汉字的左侧，如“姐”；有时位于汉字的下面，如“婆”。女部的字多和女性有关。“姓”是形声字，其中的“女”旁强调了女性在家族中的地位。传说中的“五帝”姓各不相同，黄帝姓姬，神农（即炎帝）姓姜，少昊姓嬴，虞舜姓姚，夏禹姓姒。“姬”、“姜”、“嬴”、“姚”、“姒”都是从“女”旁的，这说明在远古时代，中国确实曾经历过母系社会。不仅如此，而且那个时代，妇女处于被保护和受尊敬的地位。例如“安”字由“女”和“宀”（房子）组成。

Ancient form

女 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 女 looks like a female in a kneeling position with her two hands resting on her knees. The original meaning of 女 is female. As a radical, it usually appears often on the left or at the bottom of a compound, such as in the character 姐 (jiě; *elder sister*) and 婆 (pó; *old woman*). The character 姓 (xìng; *surname*) also has the 女 radical. This is because the characters represent a female giving a birth to her child. In prehistoric China, the legendary rulers The Five Lords, all had the 女 radical in their surnames. Their names were 姬 (jī) 姜 (jiāng), 嬴 (yíng), 姚 (yáo), and 姒 (sì). This may indicate that, for a time, China was a matrilineal society—a society that traces heritage through mothers rather than fathers. It seemed that

at that time, females were protected and respected, which is reflected in the character 安 (*ān*; *peace or safe*). The top part of 安 is the radical 宀 (*house*) and the bottom part is 女. This could indicate the belief that a family is safe when it is run by a female.



故事 Story

14. 女娲补天 (Nǚwā bǔ tiān) 女娲 name of a goddess 补 patch 天 sky



In remote antiquity, there was a goddess named 女娲. It is said that she had a human head and a snake body. She did many great things for mankind. Her most impressive gift to humanity was to patch up the sky. The sky was damaged when the God of Water had a fight with the God of Fire. In the course of their fight one of four pillars holding up the sky was broken. Unsupported, half the sky collapsed. Then a huge crack appeared in the earth causing a big forest fire that spread across the world. The people's lives were in danger. In order to save them, 女娲 melted Five-Colored Rock and used the rock liquid to fill the hole in the sky. Then she took a huge tortoise, cut off all four feet and used them as four pillars to hold up the sky. Further catastrophe was averted and humans were able to resume normal life. However, the sky still tilted a bit toward the west and the earth tipped a bit towards the east. This is why today the sun and the moon travel towards the west, and the water in the rivers flows toward the east.



15. 竹[𥯲](zhú) 部 Bamboo



古字形 𥯲

“竹”是象形字，古文字像竹之形：竹茎挺拔，竹叶下垂。作为部首，“竹”通常位于汉字的上面，写作“𥯲”，俗称“竹子头”。竹部的字多与竹质材料有关系。例如“筷”，即筷子，一般是用竹子制作的，是中国人的主要餐具之一；“笛”是用竹子制作的乐器，有上千年的历史，属于中国的民族乐器之一；“筏”是用竹、木等平摆着编扎成的一种水上交通工具；“簿”、“篇”、“笺”等字中“竹”都是表意符号。在纸发明以前，竹子曾被中国人用来当作主要的书写材料。

Ancient form 𥯲

竹 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 竹 depicts two upright bamboo poles with their leaves stretching out. When 竹 is used as a radical it often stands on the top of a compound and is written as 𥯲. When it appears as a radical, it indicates that the thing the character represents is made out of bamboo. For example, 筷 (kuài) means bamboo-made chopsticks; 笛 (dí) means bamboo flute; and 筏 (fá) is type of raft that is made of bamboo. The characters 簿 (bù; *notebook*), 篇 (piān; *a piece of writing*), and 笺 (jiān; *writing paper*) all contain 𥯲. This is because before the invention of paper Chinese people wrote on slats of bamboo.





故事 Story

15. 胸有成竹 (Xiōng yǒu chéng zhú) 胸 chest 有 have 成 mature 竹 bamboo



In the Northern Song Dynasty, A painter named Wentong was famous for his paintings of bamboos. Why was he so good at painting bamboos? His secret was that he planted all kinds of bamboos around his house, so he could observe these bamboos growing and changing in different seasons and in different weather conditions. Gradually, the varied images of these bamboos were imprinted in his mind, and appeared vividly before his eyes whenever he began to paint. A poet described Wentong's great skill in painting bamboo as 胸有成竹—the concept of bamboo exists in painter's mind before painting. Later, people used this idiom to describe the situation of having a well-thought-out plan beforehand.



16. 火[灬](huǒ) 部 Fire



古字形

“火”是象形字，古文字像火苗上窜之状。“火”的本义是指火焰。作为部首，“火”有时位于汉字的左侧，写作“火”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“灬”，读作“四点底”。例如“煮”指用火做饭，“热”指温度高。可想而知，火部的字大都与火、热或光等意义有关，例如“灭”，新造会意字，上“一”下“火”，表示把火压住并使之熄灭。又如“灰烬”即物质燃烧后剩下的粉末状的东西。

Ancient form

火 is a pictograph. The ancient form looks like a burning campfire. As a radical, it is often placed on the left or at the bottom of a compound. When placed at the bottom of a character 火 is sometimes written as 灬, as in the characters 煮(zhǔ; *to cook*) and 热(rè; *hot*). Obviously, if a character has 火 as a radical its meaning probably relates to fire. For example, 灭(miè) is formed by placing 一(a cover) over 火(fire), and so it means—to *extinguish*. In the two-character word 灰烬(huījìn) both characters have the 火 radical to indicate the meaning *ash*—the product left after a fire.



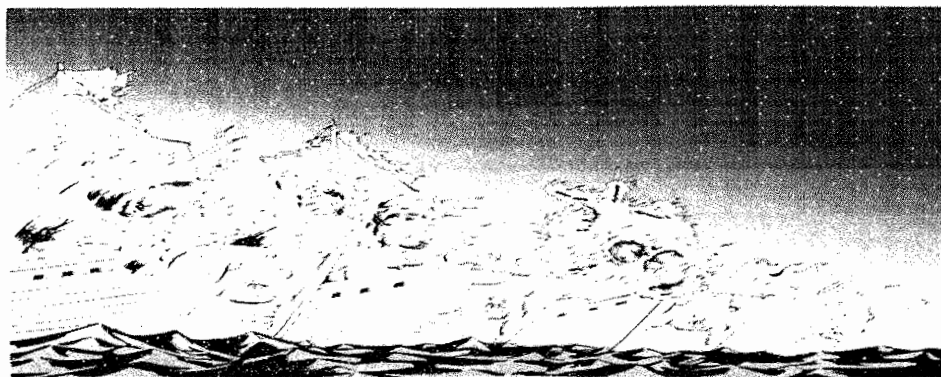


故事 Story

16. 火烧赤壁 (Huǒ shāo Chìbì) 火 fire 烧 burn 赤 red 壁 cliff (Red Cliff: a place name)



This is another story from the novel of the *Three Kingdoms*. In 208, Cao Cao—King of the Wei State, Liu Bei—King of the Shu State, and Sun Quan—King of Wu State, were still competing to become the emperor of all of China. One day Cao Cao led 200 thousand soldiers in an attack on Liu's southern territory. He intended to defeat Liu and then conquer Sun. Liu and Sun, however, finally formed an alliance to stand against Cao at Red Cliff, (a town in the north side of Yangzi River. Today the town is called Chijishan in Hubei province). Zhou Yu—the general of Sun's army, and Zhuge Liang—the Military Councilor of Liu Bei, got together to prepare for this military assault. They knew that they had much fewer soldiers than Cao Cao. It would not be wise to engage in one-to-one direct combat. However, the battle was fought on the river beside Red Cliff. Cao's soldiers were all from dry northern China, and therefore most of them did not know how to swim. For this reason, Cao Cao had ordered his troops to connect their war boats with iron chains and also to pave with wood boards the spaces between the ships, so that the soldiers could engage in combat in the boats as if they were on land. Knowing this, Zhou and Zhuge decided to attack with fire. Pretending that they



were going to capitulate to Cao, they prepared more than 10 small boats and sailed toward Cao's war boats. Cao was tricked and pleased to see his enemy with intention of surrendering. Then suddenly, each small boat burst into flame! The strong southeast wind caught the fire and quickly spread it into Cao's battleships. Soon all of Cao Cao's boats burned to ash and most of his soldiers were dead by burning or drowning. All Cao could do was to collect his surviving soldiers and withdraw to the north.

17. 王 [玉] (wáng) 部 King; Jade



古字形 𠩺 王

“王”是象形字，古文字一说像斧头之形。斧头代表着杀伐之权，这样就很自然地引申为统治与权力。在中国古代，“王”专指最高统治者，即指统治天下的君主，也称“皇帝”。作为部首，“王”有时位于汉字的下面，有时位于汉字里面。多与帝王等意义有关，例如“皇”。汉字经隶变之后，“王”和“玉”作为部首时，混同为一个形体，所以现代汉字中许多带有“王”部首的字，其意义往往和玉有关。例如“玲”是指玉的声音。“理”本指对玉石加工或雕琢。

Ancient form 𠩺 王

王 is a pictograph. Some Chinese scholars believe the ancient form of 王 is a picture of an axe. An axe could represent the right to kill; a right extended only to the emperor. Therefore 王's extended meaning is ruler. Characters containing the 王 radical have meanings related to rulers or ruling such as 皇 (huáng; emperor). After the simplification of Seal Script in the Qin Dynasty,



玉 (yù) was simplified to share the character as 王. 玉 means jade, as in 玲 (líng; *the clinking sound of jade pieces colliding*) and 理 (lǐ; *the original meaning is jade processing and carving; its extended meaning is to handle*). Therefore, when you see a character with the 王 radical, bear in mind it could mean something related to jade, rather than ruling.

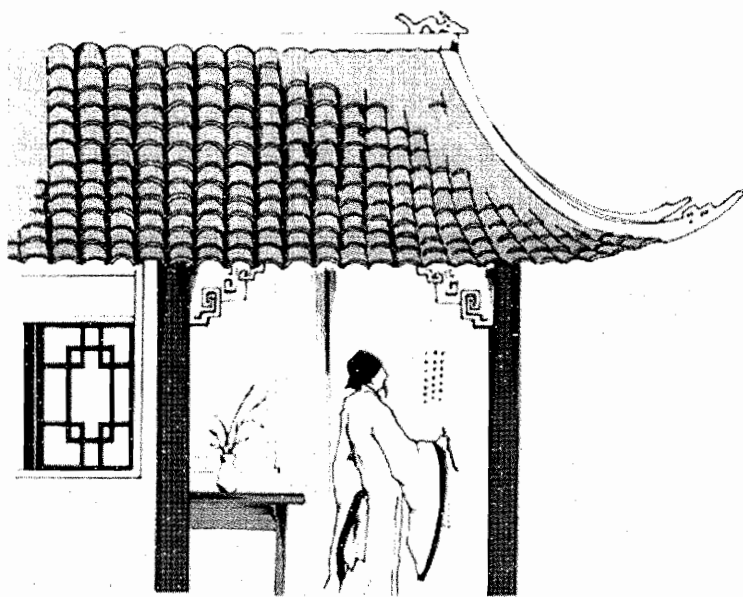


故事 Story

17 抛砖引玉 (Pāo zhuān yǐn yù) 抛 cast 砖 brick 引 attract 玉 jade



In ancient China there lived a man named Zhao Gu, who wrote very good poems. Another man—Chang Jian—also wrote poems, but thought his poetry was not as good as Zhao Gu's. Chang decided to surreptitiously solicit a poem from Zhao to keep it as piece of collection. One day, Chang learned that Zhao would visit Linyan Temple. So he wrote a few verses on the wall of the temple, but left the poem incomplete. He hoped that Zhao would see his half-done poem and would not be able to resist adding a second half. Sure enough, Zhao completed the poem. Later people started to refer to



Chang's clever scheme as 抛砖引玉, because he used his mediocre verses (bricks) as bait to get excellent verses (jade)—from Zhao Gu.

Today 抛砖引玉 means to initiate a discussion with simple remarks so that others may come up with valuable ideas. This is also a self-deprecating remark used when modestly referring to one's contribution in a group effort.

18. 日[日 𠄎](rì) 部

Sun



古字形

“日”是象形字,古文字像太阳之形:轮廓像圆形的太阳,一横或一点表示太阳的光。“日”的本义是指太阳,引申指白天,又引申为计算时间的单位,例如“十日”,即十天。作为部首,“日”通常位于汉字的左侧、上面或下面。日部字多与太阳、时间等意义有关。“时”指一切事物不断发展变化所经历的过程,即时间。“早”本指早晨,即太阳升起的时候,引申指时间,与“晚”相对,例如“早起晚睡”。一年之计在于春,春为之四季始,阳光灿烂,万物复苏,生气勃勃,所以“春”字中也有日。

Ancient form 日

日 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 日 is a picture of sun. The stroke inside the circle symbolizes the rays of sun. The original meaning of 日 is *sun*. Its extended meanings are *day and time*. For example, 时 (shí) means time; 早 (zǎo) means morning (the character suggests that sun is rising over the horizon); 晚 (wǎn) means night (the character suggests that the sun setting in the west); and 春 (chūn) means spring (the character suggests that the sunshine is now reaching the new spring grass). As you can see from the examples above the radical 日 can occur on the left, top, or bottom of a compound.



故事 Story

18. 夸父逐日 (Kuāfù zhú rì) 夸父 (Kuāfu, name of a giant) 逐 chase 日 sun



In remote antiquity, a group of giants lived deep in the mountains of northern China. The Head of the group was named 夸父. He had a pair of gold snakes hanging from his ears and had another two wrapped around his wrists. One year, the weather was extremely hot and dry. Every day the sun shone hotter than before. The trees all died and the rivers all dried out. 夸父 decided that to save themselves mankind needed control of the sunshine, so he set out to capture the sun. After many days of chasing, he saw the sun was just in front of him. So he opened his arms to grab it, but the hot, bright sun slowly roasted him. He dehydrated and died. While dying, he lamented his failure and threw away his walking stick in grief. Suddenly, the ground where



the walking stick fell erupted into a vast forest of peach trees. The peaches from these trees quenched the thirst of weary travelers throughout history.



19. 石 (shí) 部
Stone; Rock



古字形 𠩺

“石”是象形字,古文字像岩角下一石块之形。“石”的本义指山石。“石”引申指坚定和牢固。作为部首,“石”通常位于汉字的左侧,有时位于汉字的上面或下面。石部的字多与山石或石制材料有关。“础”本指柱脚石,引申指事物的基底或根基,例如“基础”。“碗”是形声字,从石,宛声。

石 is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like a rock falling from a cliff. The original meaning of 石 means *mountain rock* or *stone*. The extended meaning is *strong and stable (as a rock)*. As a radical, it can be placed on the left, top, or bottom of a compound. Characters with the 石 radical are often related to rock or things made from stone. For example, 础 (chǔ) means *foundation*, which is one of stone's primary functions. The character 碗 (wǎn; *bowl*) is a phonetic-semantic compound. The radical 石 on the left suggests that the bowl is made of stone. The right part 宛 is a phonetic radical to indicate that the pronunciation of this character is wǎn.



故事 Story

19. 点石成金 (Diǎn shí chéng jīn) 点 touch 石 stone 成 become 金 gold



It is said that in the Jin Dynasty, there was a Magistrate of Jingyang County, named Xu Xun, who could do magic. One year, due to terrible



weather conditions, there was no harvest of grain. Peasants were not able to pay their taxes. Xu Xun then used his magic to help the people. He touched a stone and immediately it turned into a piece of gold. He distributed the gold to all the peasants so that they could use it to pay their taxes. Now the idiom 点石成金 also means to turn a crude essay into a literary gem.

20. 鱼[魚](yú) 部 Fish



古字形

“鱼”是象形字，古文字像鱼之形。“鱼”和“余”谐音，因此在中国的民俗文化中，“鱼”是富足、吉祥、有余的象征，所以中国人设宴庆祝节日时一定要吃鱼。作为部首，“鱼”通常位于汉字的左侧，有时位于汉字的下面。鱼部的字多和鱼有关，例如“鲤”，即“鲤鱼”，是中国常见的一种鱼。“鲜”字最早是指鱼类，引申指味道的鲜美。“鲠”是指鱼骨头。

Ancient form

鱼 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 鱼 is a drawing of a fish. Because the pronunciation of fish 鱼 (yú) is the same as the pronunciation for 余 (yú; *surplus*), so Chinese people always eat a fish on major holidays to bring good luck and plenty. As a radical, 鱼 often appears on the left or at the bottom of a compound. The meanings of characters with the 鱼 radical often connect fish or fish related things, such as 鲤 (lǐ; *carp*), 鲜 (xiān; *fresh as fish*), and 鲠 (gěng; *fishbone*).



故事 Story

20. 缘木求鱼 (Yuán mù qiú yú) 缘 climb 木 tree 求 catch 鱼 fish



In the Spring and Autumn Period, the King of Qi intended to rule his state with force. However, Mencius (BC 372—BC 289) offered the King a piece of advice: “Your Majesty, using force to control your people would be just like climbing a tree to catch a fish. You’re making a futile effort.” The king accepted Mencius’s advice and ruled his country with benevolence.

缘木求鱼 is used to describe working in a wrong direction or striving in opposition to natural laws. When a person works in this way it is impossible to achieve their goals.



第四课 山、足、鸟、广、辵、衣、犬、目、刀、邑

21. 山 (shān) 部 Mountain



古字形

“山”是象形字，古文字像山峰并立之形。本义是指地面上由土石构成的高出地面的部分。作为部首，“山”通常位于汉字的左侧；有时位于汉字的上面或下面。山部的字，一般都与山岭或山的形状有关系。“峰”是指高而尖的山头。“岩”是指高峻的山崖或构成地壳的石头。“岳”是指高大的山，“五岳”是指中国的五大名山：东岳泰山、南岳衡山、西岳华山、北岳恒山、中岳嵩山，其中泰山为五岳之尊。

Ancient form

山 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 山 depicts three distant mountain peaks. Therefore, the original meaning of 山 refers to mountain. As a radical, it sometimes appears on the left side of a compound and sometimes on the top or bottom of a compound. Characters containing the 山 radical have meanings related to mountain. For example, the character 峰 (fēng) means *peak*, 岩 (yán) means *crag or rock in a mountain*. 岳 (yuè) refers to *magnificent mountains*. In China, there are five 岳: 东岳 The Eastern Mountain—(Mount

Tai泰山); 南岳 The Southern Mountain (Mount Heng 衡山); 西岳 The Western Mountain (Mount Hua 华山); 北岳 (Mount Heng 恒山); and The Central Mountain 中岳(Mount Song 嵩山). Among them, Mount Tai is the most famous.



故事 Story

21. 愚公移山 (Yúgōng yí shān)

愚 Foolish 公 old man 移 move 山 mountain



Once upon a time, there was an old man. People called him Yugong (Foolish man). He was about 90 years old. In front of his home there were two mountains that caused great inconvenience to his family. To go anywhere they had to climb over the mountains. Yugong decided to remove the two mountains. Another old man called Zhisou (Wise man) lived near the Yellow River. When he heard of Yugong's plan he laughed, saying, "Yugong is foolish. He is so old and the mountains are so big. How can he remove them?" But Yugong replied, "If I cannot finish my work, my children, grandchildren and their descendants will continue my efforts. Eventually, we will move the mountain." Yugong's determination impressed the Lord of Heaven, so he sent two supernatural beings to help move the two mountains away.

This story shows that with dogged perseverance everything is possible.



22. 足[𠂔](zú) 部 Foot



古字形 𠂔

“足”是会意字，古文字下部是“止”，即脚的象形，上面的形状一说是膝盖的象形，两部分合起来正好是古代“足”所指的范围：自膝盖到足趾的部分，也就是今天我们所说的“小腿”。大约自中古以后，“足”表示人和某些动物身体最下部接触地面的部分，也就是我们今天所称的“脚”。作为部首，“足”通常位于汉字的左侧或下边。“足”部的字大多与脚有关。“跟”是指脚的后部。“趾”是指脚指头。“踢”是指用脚触击。“跑”是指两脚交互向前迅速前进，例如“跑步”。“路”是指往来通行的地方。“蹩”指脚扭伤。

Ancient form 𠂔

足 is an ideograph. The top part of the ancient form indicates the knee, and the bottom part is the lower leg and foot. After the Middle Ancient Era (from third century to ninth century C.E.), 足 came to be used to refer exclusively to feet. As a radical, 足 often appears on the left side of a compound, although it sometimes also appears on the bottom. Characters that contain 足 often have meanings related to parts of the foot or actions that use the feet. For example, 跟 (gēn) means heel; 趾 (zhǐ) means toe; 踢 (tī) means to kick; 跑 (pǎo) means to run; and 路 (lù) means road (amenity for walking). 蹩 (bié) means wrench.

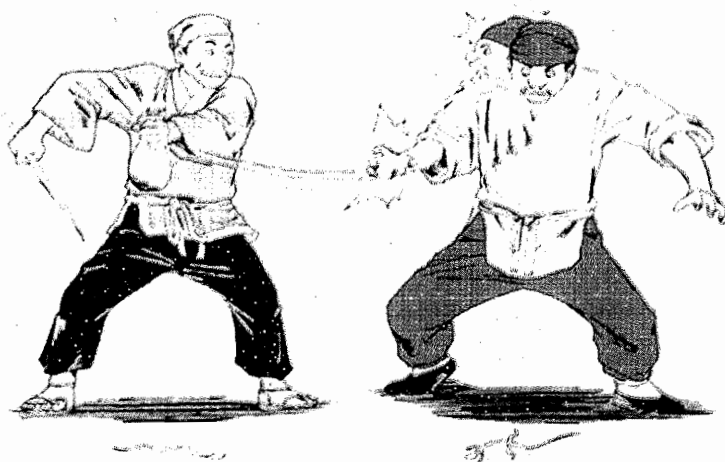


故事 Story

22. 画蛇添足 (Huà shé tiān zú) 画 draw 蛇 snake 添 add 足 feet

A long time ago, a family gave their God an offering of a jar of wine. After the ceremony, the host of the family gave the wine to his servants. There were several servants and all of them wanted the whole jar. One servant came up with an idea to decide the issue. He suggested that they hold a drawing contest. They would each draw a snake. The person who finished drawing the snake first would get the wine. Everyone agreed to this plan and started drawing. One person drew very fast. He finished the snake and grabbed the wine jar with one hand. Noticing the others were still working, he used his other hand to continue drawing and adding feet to his snake. When he was doing so, another person finished drawing and grabbed the jar of wine from his hand saying, "Snakes don't have feet, so what you drew is not a snake! I finished drawing a snake first so I am the winner."

This story is a warning not to ruin the effect by adding something unnecessary.



23. 鸟[鳥](niǎo) 部 Bird



古字形

“鸟”是象形字，古文字像一只长尾长羽的飞禽之形。本义是指鸟，引申指飞禽的总称。作为部首，“鸟”通常位于汉字的右侧；有时位于汉字的左侧或下面。鸟部字多与飞禽及其习性有关。“鸡”、“鸭”、“鹅”之所以都是从鸟部，是因为它们都具有“飞”的本能。“鸵”即鸵鸟，是现代鸟类中形体(个儿)最大的一种鸟，多生活在非洲的草原和沙漠地带。“鸣”本来是指鸟的叫声，引申指飞禽或昆虫的叫声。

Ancient form

鸟 is a pictograph. Its ancient form is a vivid portrayal of a bird with a long tail and long feathers. Therefore, its original meaning is bird. Later 鸟 was used to refer to any kind of birds. As a radical, 鸟 often is placed on the left side or on the bottom of a compound. The meanings of characters with the 鸟 radical are often associated with birds, such as 鸵 (tuó; *ostrich*), 鸡(jī; *chicken*), 鸭(yā; *duck*), and 鹅(é; *goose*). This radical can also signify birds' behaviors, such as 鸣 (míng; *birdsong*).



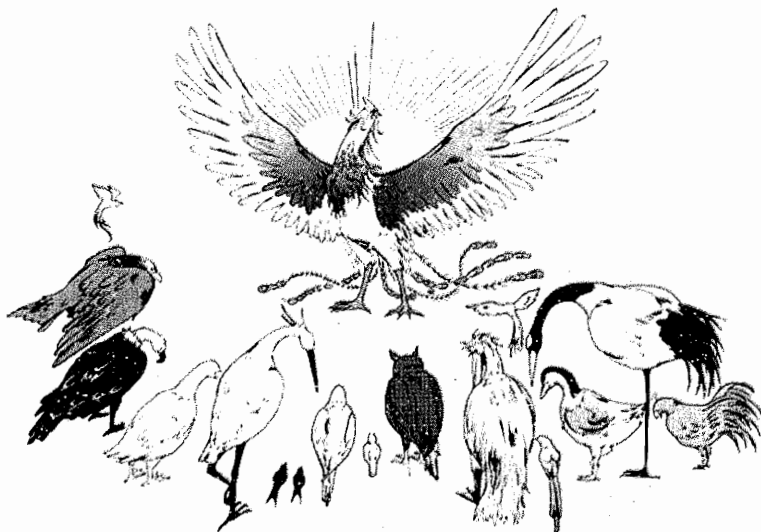
故事 Story

23. 百鸟朝凤 (Bǎi niǎo cháo fèng) 百 hundred 鸟 birds 朝 follow 凤 phoenix



Long, long ago, the phoenix was just one of among hundreds of ordinary birds. The phoenix, however, was a very diligent bird. While the other birds were playing and sleeping she worked every day from morning till night collecting food and storing it in a cave, until she had amassed a huge store. One year, there was a huge drought. There was no food in woods and the other birds were starving. When seeing the other birds suffering, the phoenix opened her cave and let the others share her food so that no bird died. In order to thank the phoenix for her generosity, each bird pulled one feather from their body and made a beautiful robe. They presented it to the phoenix as a birthday gift. They also elected the phoenix Queen of the Birds.

This is why Phoenixes are the most beautiful birds in the world.



24. 疒 (nè) 部 Sickness



古字形 𠄎

“疒”是象形字，古文字描摹的是病人卧床之形。“疒”现在只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“疒”总是位于汉字的左上侧，俗称“病字旁”。疒部的字多与疾病或治疗等意义有关。例如：癌，痛，疗。“病”是形声字，从疒丙声，本义是指疾病。

Ancient form 𠄎

疒 is a pictograph. In the ancient script 𠄎 shows a sick person lying down in a bed. 疒 is no longer an independent character in modern Chinese. It is used only as a radical to indicate disease, discomfort, and treatment, such as in the characters 癌 (ái; *cancer*), 痛 (tòng; *pain*), and 疗 (liǎo; *cure*). The character 病 (bìng; *sickness*) is a phonetic-semantic compound. The radical 疒 signifies its meaning of sickness, 丙 (bǐng) hints at the sound of the character, which is bìng.



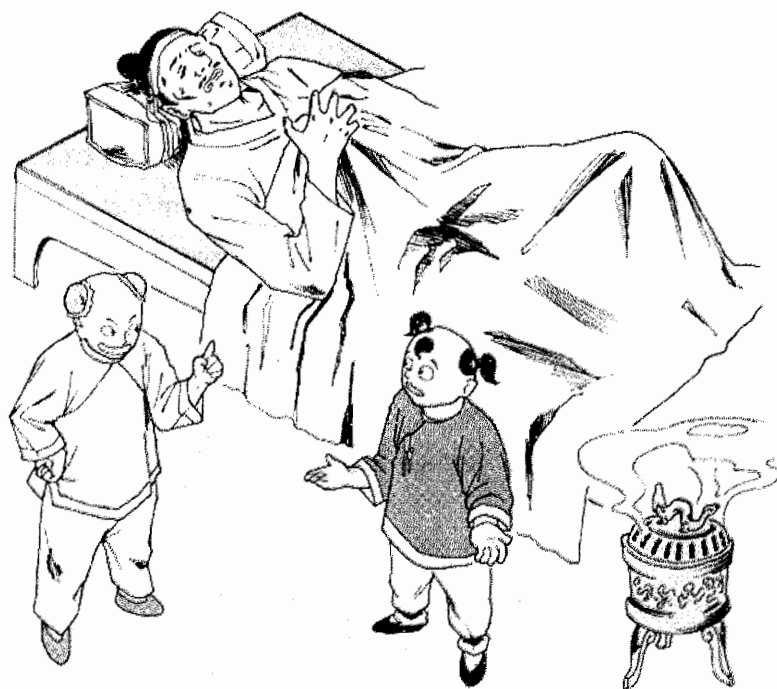
故事 Story

24. 病入膏肓 (Bìng rù gāohuāng) 病 disease 入 attack 膏肓 vitals



King of the Jin State was very ill. He had seen many doctors, but his symptoms did not get any better. One day, he heard of a famous doctor in the Qin State, and sent his servant for the doctor. The doctor came to Jin and visited the King. He examined him carefully. After the examination, the doctor told the King that his illness was incurable because the disease had already attacked his vital organs. It was too late to do anything.

The idiom 病入膏肓 describes a problem or calamity that is already beyond repair.



25. 辵[ì](chuò)部 Walking; Movement



古字形 𡥉

“辵”是会意字，古文字形象是一个十字路口，上面有脚印。本义是指走走停停。作为部首，“辵”通常位于汉字左侧，写作“辵”，俗称“走之底”。辵部的字大多与行走等意义有关，例如，逃、追、迁。再如，“进”的本义是向前移动；“造”的本义是到达。在现代汉语中“造”的另一个常用义是创造或制造。

Ancient form 𡥉

辵 is an ideograph. The ancient form of 辵 looks like a picture of a crossroads tracked with footprints—to symbolize that people are walking in the streets. The original meaning of 辵 is *intermittent walking*. As a radical, when 辵 is placed on the left of a compound, it is written as 辵. The characters containing the 辵 radical often have meanings related to movement. For example, 逃 (táo) means *to run*; 追 (zhuī) means *to chase*; and 迁 (qiān) means *to move*. The character 进 (jìn; *to enter*) originally meant *to move forward*. In modern Chinese, however, some characters with the 辵 radical have more than one meaning. Consider, for example, the character 造 (zào), while its original meaning is *to reach*, in modern Chinese 造 also means *to make or to create*.



故事 Story

25. 随与隋朝 (Suí yǔ Suí Cháo) 随 suí 与 and 隋 Suí 朝 Dynasty



Character 随 originally was used for the Sui Dynasty (581–618) because the surname of the First Emperor in the Sui Dynasty was 随. However, later the emperor changed the character from 随 to 隋 for his Dynasty, because 随 has the radical 辶 which implies motion. The emperor considered *motion* a sign of turbulence and instability, something he did not want for his country.



26. 衣[yī] (yī) 部 Clothes; Clothing



古字形



“衣”是象形字，古文字像上衣之形：上面像领口，两旁像袖筒，下面像两襟左右相覆。“衣”的本义是指上衣。引申指衣服的通称。作为部首，“衣”通

常位于汉字的左侧,写作“衤”,俗称“补衣旁”;有时位于汉字下面,写作“衣”。衣部的字多与衣服有关。“装”本指行装,引申指“服装”、“装饰”等意义。“衫”是上衣,有“衬衫”、“棉毛衫”之分。“袖”是衣袖,有“长袖”、“短袖”之别。“裁”本指剪裁衣服,引申指用剪裁其他事物。

Ancient form

衣 is a pictograph. The ancient form of this character depicts the top part of a Chinese gown with a low-cut collar and two loose sleeves. Originally, 衣 referred only to the clothes worn on the torso—coats and shirts. Later, 衣 came to be used to refer to all types of clothing. When the radical 衣 stands on the left side of a compound it is written as 衤. Characters containing 衣 are usually related to clothing, cloth, or sewing, such as 衬衫 (chèshān; *shirt or blouse*), 袖 (xiù; *sleeve*).



故事 Story

26. 一衣带水 (Yī yīdài shuǐ) — one 衣带 clothing strip 水 water



At the end of the Southern Dynasties (420–589), there was a State located south of the Yangzi River known as Chen. Emperor Sui Wendi decided to conquer Chen in order to unify all of China. He led his army to the northern side of the Yangzi River, but due to the Yangzi River's raging current his army was not able to cross. However, Emperor Sui did not give up. He said, “My goal of unifying the country will not be ruined by a strip of water.” So he ordered his army to build ships. In the end he successfully

conquered Chen and established the Sui Dynasty.

Today, Chinese people use 一衣帶水 to describe two places are close but separated by a river.



27. 犬[犭](quǎn) 部 Dog; Animal



古字形 𤝵

“犬”是象形字，古文字像犬之形。“犬”的本义是指狗。古人多称“狗”为“犬”，犬是人类亲密接触的动物之一。“犬”还是动物类汉字的主要标志之一，例如“狼”、“猴”、“猫”等字中都有“犬”。作为部首，“犬”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“犭”，俗称“反犬旁”；有时位于汉字的右侧和下面，写作“犬”。犬部的字多与狗或动物的名称、习性等意义有关。“猛”本指健壮的狗，引申指行动迅捷，力量强大，“狠”本指狗争斗时发出的声音，后引申指凶恶。

Ancient form 𤝵

犬 is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like a dog in an upright position. According to historical chronicles, the Chinese people have always had a close relationship with dogs. This could be the reason that people use 犬 as a base radical to create many new characters for animals such as 狼 (láng; *wolf*), 猴 (hóu; *monkey*), and 猫 (māo; *cat*). Please note that as a radical standing on the left side of a compound 犬 is written as 犭. The meaning of characters that contain 犭 are usually related to dogs, animals. 猛 (měng; *fierce*) originally meant a strong dog; and the original meaning of 狠 (hěn; *ruthless*) is the growl produced by dogs when they are fighting.



故事 Story

27. 狂犬吠日 (Kuáng quǎn fèi rì) 狂 crazy 犬 dog 吠 bark 日 sun

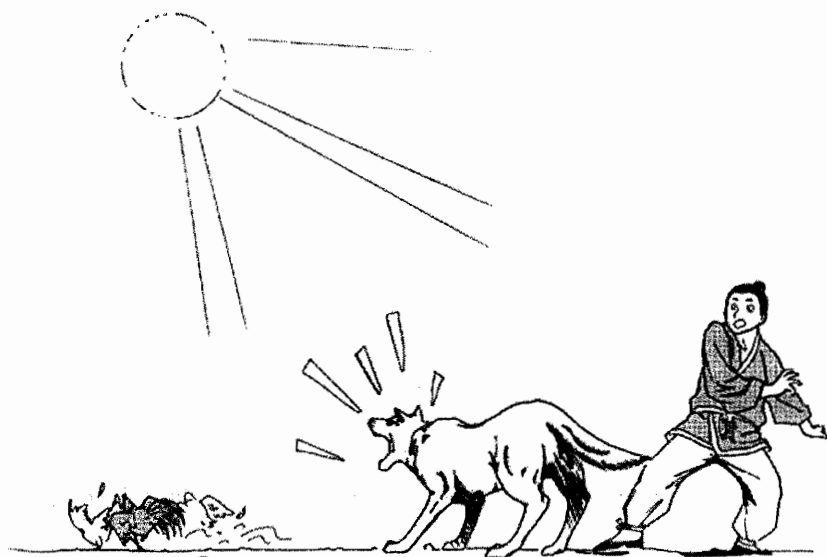


Once upon a time, there was a crazy dog. It attacked everything from people and animals.

One day, the dog went out and saw a few roosters that were fighting for a bone. The dog barked and the roosters were frightened and ran away. Of course, the dog got the bone and ate it. Because of his crazy and fierce behavior, everyone avoided him.

One day, the crazy dog was very ill and he was very troubled by the heat. Unfortunately, it was summer and every day dawned bright and sunny. He thought if he barked at the sun, the sun would go away just like the people and roosters had. So he barked at the sun fiercely. The sun, however, shone hotter and hotter. Exposed to the hot sun, the crazy dog grew exhausted and finally died.

狂犬吠日 now expresses the futility of challenging progressive force.



28. 目(mù) 部 Eye



古字形 

“目”是象形字，古文字描摹的是眼睛的形状：外边轮廓像眼眶，里面像瞳孔。“目”的本义就是指人的眼睛。作为部首，“目”通常位于汉字的左侧，有时位于汉字的下面。目部的字多与眼睛有关。“眉”是指眼睛上面的眉毛。“盼”本指眼睛黑白分明，引申指希望，向往。“睡”指闭目休息。“看”字由“目”和“手”组成，表示一个人把手放在眼睛上方正在看什么。

Ancient form

目 is a pictograph. The ancient form of this character is a picture of eye. The original meaning of 目 is *eye*. As a radical, it often stands on the left side of a compound. It also sometimes appears on the underside of a compound. Characters containing 目 have meanings related to eyes, the area of the face around the eye, or eye-related activities. For examples, 眉 (méi) means eyebrow. The character 盼 (pàn) originally referred to the bright colors in the eye—white and black. The extended meaning of 盼 is *to look forward*. 睡 (shuì) means *to sleep with eyes closed*; 看 (kàn) means *to see*. This character consists 手 and 目 indicating a hand is placed above an eye to see something.



故事 Story

28. 刮目相看 (Guā mù xiāng kàn)
刮 rub 目 eye 相 to 看 look

During the Three Kingdoms Period, there was a General in the Wu State named Lv. Lv came from a poor family and had no opportunity for formal education. People mocked him, saying the only thing he knew how to



do was fight. He was very unhappy and decided to teach himself reading and military knowledge. He studied diligently. After three days he met with General Lu. They discussed military affairs together. Lu found that Lv had learned a lot. He praised him and said that although General Lv had studied only for three days, he must be considered with new eyes.

刮目相看 is used to describe the situation when a person must be treated with increased respect.

29. 刀[刂 ㄣ](dāo) 部

Knife



古字形



“刀”是象形字，古文字像一把刀的形状：上面是刀柄，下面是刀体。刀的历史十分悠久，据考古学家考证，在中国的史前时期已有许多石刀。作为部首，“刀”通常位于汉字的右侧，大多写作“刂”，俗称“立刀旁”；位于汉字上面时写作“ㄣ”；位于汉字下面时写作“刀”。刀部的字大都与刀或刻划等意义有关。“利”是会意字，从刀从禾，表示以刀断禾的意思。本义是指刀剑锋利或刀口快，例如“利刃”。“切”是形声字，从刀七声，意思是用刀把物品分成若干部分。“分”是以刀剖物，使之分开。

Ancient form 𠄠

刀 is a pictograph. The ancient form of this character looks like a knife. The top part is the handle of a knife and the bottom part is the blade. According to archeological studies, during the prehistoric age the Chinese people had already invented several types of stone knives. As a radical, when 刀 is placed on the right side of a compound, it is sometimes written as 刂. When 刀 is placed on the top of a compound, it is written as ㄅ. Characters that contain 刀 often have meanings related to using knife to do something. 利 (lì) is an ideograph. It is a combination of the radical for grain 禾 (hé) with the radical 刂 for knife. The original meaning of 利 is *to use a knife to cut grain*. The extended meanings of 利 are *benefits and sharp*. 切 (qiē/qiè) is a phonetic-semantic compound. The left part, 七 (qī), indicates the pronunciation of the character. The right part 刀 indicates the meaning of this character—*to cut*. The character 分 (fēn) means *to separate*. The original meaning of it is to cut an object into two pieces (八) with a knife.



故事 Story

29. 刀耕火种 (Dāo gēng huǒ zhòng) 刀 knife 耕 plough 火 fire 种 plant



In ancient times, peasants in China farmed using the slash-and-burn method—刀耕火种. This method involves burning wild grass to make fertilizer, then using a knife to cut holes in the ground to put seeds in.



刀耕火种 sometimes is used to describe something that is in a primitive or underdeveloped stage.



30. 邑[阝在右](yì) 部 City

古字形



“邑”是会意字，古文字上面是“口(wéi)”，表示疆域，下面是跪着的人形，表示人口，合起来的意思是城邑。作为部首，“邑”通常位于汉字的右侧，写作“阝”，俗称“右耳旁”。邑部的字多和地名、城郊等意义有关。“都(dū)”指大都市，“通都大邑”是指四通八达的大都会、大城市；又引申指某一国家最高的行政机关所在地，例如“首都”。“郊”是指城市之外的区域。

Ancient form 邑

邑 is an ideograph. In the ancient script it consists of two parts: the top part 口 (wéi; to encircle) indicates the boundary of a city. The bottom part represents a kneeling person, which in this character signifies the populace. Together, 邑 means *city or town*. As a radical, 邑 is often placed on the right side of a compound, where it is written as 阝. Characters with 阝 often have meanings related to places, cities, or towns. For example, 都 (dū) means *metropolis*. It also means *capital*. 郊 (jiāo) mean *suburbs*.

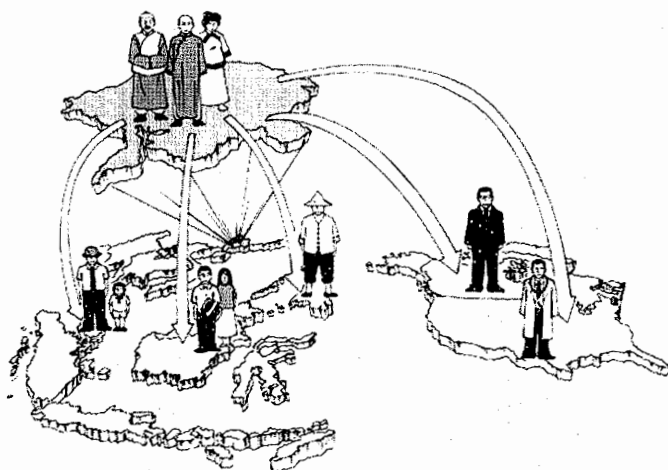


故事 Story

30. 五邑侨乡 (Wǔ yì qiáo xiāng) 五 five 邑 city 侨 overseas 乡 town



五邑 is located in the Jiangmen City in the west of Zhujiang Delta of Guangdong Province. Because Jiangmen City consists of five small towns, throughout history Jiangmen has been called 五邑 (The five cities). People also refer to 五邑 as 侨乡 (the town of overseas Chinese). This is because 57% percent of the population is composed of “overseas Chinese”—Chinese who were foreign born or spent some time abroad. People of 五邑 have been



immigrating to foreign countries for over a thousand years. Immigrants from 五邑 are distributed over 107 countries in the world. Most of them reside in the United States and Canada. The younger generations of these immigrants also come back and reside in 五邑. This is the major reason that 五邑 becomes a 侨乡.

第五课 宀、禾、马、贝、车、阜、示、食、酉、八

31. 宀 (mián) 部 House



古字形 宀

“宀”是象形字，古文字像房屋之形。“宀”现在只用作部首，一般不单独成字。作为部首，“宀”总是位于汉字的上面，俗称“宝盖头”。宀部的字都和房屋或居住有关。“家”是指家庭，由“宀”和“豕”组成，“宀”表示房屋，是家的空间建筑形式；而“豕”则是一头猪，为什么让“豕”居于“宀”中才是“家”呢？从考古发现来看，新石器时代文化遗址中出土的家畜骨骼中猪骨最多。由此可以推断，先民饲养的家畜中，“豕”是最多的一类。室则指房间。

Ancient form 宀

宀 is an ideograph. The ancient script of 宀 looks like an outline of a house. In modern Chinese 宀 is no longer an independent character. Rather, it is used only as a radical placed on the top of a compound. The meanings of characters containing this radical relate to houses or rooms. The character 家 (jiā) means *home*. It consists of two radicals: the 宀 indicates a dwelling and 豕 refers to a pig. Why did the ancient Chinese use a pig under a roof to indicate “home”? Archaeological studies show that pigs were the most



common domestic animal during the Neolithic Age. This is probably the reason that 豕 was used to create the character 家. Another character, 室 (shì), means room.



故事 Story

31. 引狼入室 (Yǐn láng rù shì) 引 invite 狼 wolf 入 enter 室 house



Once upon a time, there was a shepherd who was tending to sheep. One day he realized there was a wolf following his flock. At first, he was very cautious, afraid the wolf would attack the sheep. The wolf, however, did not hurt the sheep. The next day, when the shepherd drove his sheep back into the mountains, the same wolf appeared. Again he did not attack the sheep but just followed quietly. After a month, the shepherd came to believe that the wolf was quite friendly, and so he began treating the wolf as if he were a shepherd dog. One evening, when it was time to herd the sheep home, he allowed the wolf to return together with his sheep, and stay overnight in the sheepfold. The next day, the shepherd discovered to his horror that the wolf had eaten a lamb and wounded several sheep!

We use 引狼入室 to describe the situation in which one trusts an enemy and as result hurts oneself.



32. 禾 (hé) 部
Grain古字形

“禾”是象形字，古文字像谷子的形状：上面是穗，下面是叶子和秸秆。“禾”的本义是指谷子。在中国古代，禾是粟谷的专称，后来成为粮食作物的统称。作为部首，“禾”通常位于汉字的左侧；有时位于汉字的上面。禾部的字多与谷物、庄稼有关。“秋”字以禾谷成熟作为“秋”这一季节的特征，秋季是谷熟收获的季节，农作物呈金黄或火红色，这也是“秋”字以“禾”和“火”作为构字理据的原因。“香”的本义是指谷物散发出的香甜的气味。“秧”是形声字，它的意思是未成熟的农作物。

Ancient form



禾 is a pictograph. The ancient symbol is a picture of mature grains that are ready to harvest. The original meaning of 禾 is *millet*. Later, 禾 was used to refer to all kinds of grains. As a radical, 禾 is usually placed on the left side of a compound. It sometimes also appears on the top of a compound. The character 秋 (qiū) means autumn. This character has two radicals—禾, which indicates the mature grains that we harvest in the fall, and 火 (huǒ; fire) which recalls the fiery colors ripe grains take on in the fall. The character 香 (xiāng) has 禾 on its top. The original meaning of 香 is *the rich aroma of maturing grains*. Later 香 came to be used to refer to all kinds of good smells. The character 秧 (yāng) is a phonetic-semantic compound which means *young grains*. 央 (yāng) on the right side indicates the pronunciation of the character.



故事 Story

32. 锄禾 (Chú hé) To weed and to plow 锄 to weed and plow 禾 grain



锄禾 (a Tang Dynasty poem widely known to the Chinese people)

锄禾

Weed and Plow

锄禾日当午，

Weeding in the grain field under the midday sun,

汗滴禾下土。

Sweat rolling down to the earth,

谁知盘中餐，

Who realizes that the food on the plates,

粒粒皆辛苦。

Each grain comes from hard plowing.



33. 马[馬](mǎ) 部 Horse



古字形



“马”是象形字，古文字像一匹马的形状。马在中国古代是最重要的战争工具之一，古代打仗时经常用马拉战车。“马路”本指马行走的路，今天在城

市的马路上已经很难看到马了,但是我们仍然用“马路”来指称交通道路。作为部首,“马”通常位于汉字的左侧;有时位于汉字的下面。马部的字多与马或驾驶等意义有关。“骄”本指健壮异常的马,而这种马是比较难于驯服和控制,由此引申为骄傲、骄纵等意思。“驾”本是指把车套在马身上,使之拉车,引申指使开动或操纵。

Ancient form



马 is a pictograph. The ancient script depicts a standing horse. According to Chinese military history, horses were the most important assets in war. Horses were not only used by the cavalry, they also pulled the war chariots. The word 马路 (mǎlù; *highway*) originally meant *road for horses to go through*. As a radical, 马 is usually placed on the left side or bottom of a compound. The original meaning of 骄 (jiāo) is *healthy and strong horses*. Because strong horses are sometimes willful, so 骄 also means *proud or arrogant*. The character 驾 (jià) means *to drive*. Its original meaning is “to have the horse pull a war chariot.”



故事 Story

33. 指鹿为马 (Zhǐ lù wéi mǎ) 指 call 鹿 stag 为 as 马 horse

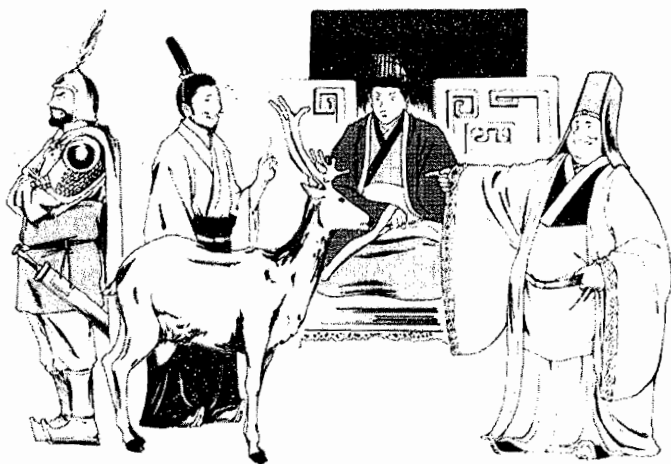


In the Qin Dynasty, a Prime Minister named Zhao Gao was very ambitious. Unsatisfied with his position as a Prime Minister he began plotting to usurp the throne. He was not sure, however, how many people in the court would support him. So, he devised a way to test the court officials to find out who were his supporters and who were his opponents.



One day, when all court officials were assembled to discuss court affairs, Zhao brought a stag in and said to the emperor, "I present this excellent horse to your majesty." The emperor was confused because he could see it was a stag. But Zhao insisted that it was a horse and asked the court officials to express their opinion on whether it was a stag or a horse. Some of the officials were afraid of being persecuted by Zhao if they told truth, so they agreed with Zhao and called the stag a horse.

指鹿为马 is used to describe willful misrepresentation, such as saying that black is white.



34. 贝[貝](bèi) 部 Seashell



古字形



“贝”是象形字，古文字描摹的是一枚贝壳的形状。“贝”通常位于汉字的左侧；有时位于汉字的下面。在中国的远古时代，“贝”曾被用作货币，所以贝部的字，大多与钱财或价格有关。例如“账”是指货币、货物出入的记载，“赔”是由于某种原因亏损了钱，而“赚”则是由于某种原因积蓄了钱。“贵”、“贱”等字既表示物品价格的高低，又表示人之地位或身份的等级优越或低下。“贤”是指多才多德的人；“责”本是指索取借出去的财物，引申指责任。

Ancient form

贝 is a pictograph. The ancient symbol is a picture of seashell. When 贝 is used as a radical, it is placed either on the left side or at the bottom of a compound. In ancient China, 贝 were used as currency. Therefore, characters containing 贝 are mostly related to money, price, and valuables. For examples, 账 (zhàng) means *account*; 赔 (péi) means *to compensate* (a type of monetary transaction); 赚 (zhuàn) means *to earn money*; 贵 (guì) means *expensive* and 贱 (jiàn) means *cheap*. Both 贵 and 贱 are used to indicate the value of goods, and both have extended meanings that refer to an individual's social status. A 贵人 (guìrén) means one who enjoys high social status while a 贱人 (jiànrén) is an underprivileged person or a serf. 贤人 means a talented person (with valuable skills). The original meaning of 责 (zé) is *to ask for money back*. Its extended meaning is responsibility.



故事 Story

34. 成语拾贝 (Chéngyǔ shí bèi)

成语 idiom 拾 pick up 贝 a seashell



成语拾贝 There are 18,000 Chinese idioms listed in the *Dictionary of Chinese Idioms*. It is common knowledge that Chinese idioms usually consist of four or more characters. But do you know which character appears most often in Chinese idioms? It is the character “一”, as in 一不压众 (One person cannot beat a critical mass). According to statistical analysis, there are about 415 idioms containing the character 一. The second highest frequency character is “不” such as in 不破不立 (There is no construction without destruction). There are about 293 idioms with 不. The third most common character is 无 which is used in 180 idioms, such as the idiom 无可奈何 (There is no help for it).

贝 seashells were used as currency in a certain period of Chinese history; therefore, 贝 also means something valuable or priceless. 成语拾贝 means to collect a few pieces of valuable information about Chinese idioms.



35. 车[車 𨋖](chē) 部

Cart, Vehicle



古字形 𨋖

“车”是象形字,古文字描摹的是古代使用的两轮带架的车形。“车”的本义是指陆地上有轮子的运输工具。作为部首,“车”通常位于汉字的左侧,写作“𨋖”。车部的字多与交通工具或运输有关。“轨”本是指车辙,也指车子两轮之间的距离,引申指火车、电车等行驶的路轨。“辇”的上部是两个人,下部是车,意思是人拉的车,多用于宫廷、皇室。

Ancient form 𨋖

车 is a pictograph. The ancient form of it depicts a type of two-wheeled cart that was used in ancient times. The original meaning of 车 refers to any wheeled form of transportation. As a radical, it often appears on the left side of the character and is written as 车, such as in the character 轨 (guǐ). The original meaning of 轨 is *the distance between two wheels of a cart*. Now it also means *track*. 辇 (niǎn) has 车 underneath and two persons on the top. Together, it means rickshaw—a man-drawn carriage.



故事 Story

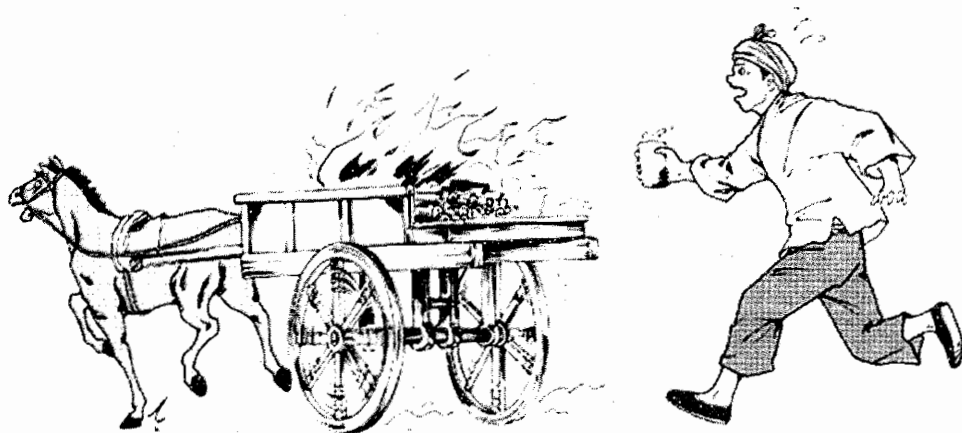
35. 杯水车薪 (Bēi shuǐ chē xīn)

杯 cup 水 water 车 carload 薪 faggots



杯水车薪 means to extinguish a burning carload of faggots with a cup of water. Here it is the story:

One day, a woodman cut and gathered several faggots in the mountain. Before dark, he loaded all the faggots onto his horse-drawn cart, then climbed up on the horse's back and drove the cart home. On the way, he lit his tobacco pipe. It was a windy night, and a few sparks were blown back. They



ignited the bundled sticks behind him. But the woodman did not notice it until a child shouted: "Your faggots are burning!" The woodman stopped the cart and grabbed a cup he found on the ground. He rushed to a nearby pond, filled the cup with water, and poured it onto the faggots. The fire, however, got stronger and stronger. Eventually, all the sticks were reduced to ashes.

This idiom describes situations in which people try to solve serious problems with utterly inadequate measures.

36. 阜[阝在左](fù)部

Hill



古字形



“阜”是象形字，古文字像山崖边的石阶之形，本义是指土山。作为部首，“阜”通常位于汉字的左侧写作“阝”，俗称“左耳旁”。阜部的字多与地势或升降等意义有关。例如“阳”的本义是指山的南面水的北面，由于南面光线充足，所以“阳”的常用义为太阳、阳光，例如“向阳”、“阳台”；再引申义为明亮、温暖等意义。“阴”的本义是指山的北面水的南面，由于北面光线不充足，所以“阴”的常用义为阴凉、黑暗等意义。“阳”与“阴”是一对相反的概念，中国古代的哲学家用以表示事物的两个对立面，并由此引申出许多意义。例如：阳为正，阴为负；阳指凸出，阴指凹进；阳指男性，曰阳刚，阴指女性，曰阴柔；阳指人间为生，阴指鬼府为死。“降”是指落下。

Ancient form 𠂔

阜 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 阜 looks like a rock stairway ascending a hill. As a radical, 阜 usually stands on the left side of a compound and is written as 阝. The meaning of 阜 is the rise and fall of the hills. The original meaning of 阳 (yáng) is the south slope of a hill. The south slope of a hill gets the most sunshine, so 阳 also refers to the sun. 阴 (yīn) refers to the north slope of a hill, which often does not get enough sunshine. Therefore it also means cool and dark. Together, these two characters 阴阳 (yīn yáng) refer to the opposed opposites in nature—a key principle in traditional Chinese philosophy. Another character that uses the 阜 radical is 降 (jiàng). 降 is a phonetic-semantic compound, in which 冫 (jiàng) indicates the pronunciation. 降 means *to descend from a hill*.



故事 Story

36. 曲阜 (Qūfù) The name for Confucius' hometown 曲 zigzag 阜 hill



曲阜 is located in the southwest of Shandong province. After the Chu State Conquered the Lu State in 249 B.C., the Lu State was reduced into Lu



County. In 596, Lu County was renamed 曲阜, a name which has stuck until today. 曲阜 was so named because inside of Lu County there was a mountain ridge that zigzagged for about two miles. 曲阜 is the hometown of ancient great scholar—Confucius. Confucius established the Confucian School during the Warring States Period. The two core philosophies of this school are the maintenance of social hierarchies and the principle of benevolent rule. If you ever have a chance to visit 曲阜, there are three places you should visit: The former residence of Confucius, the Confucian Temple, and the Forest of Confucius (The Confucius Family Cemetery). 曲阜 is one of the World's Great Historical and Cultural Relics as designated by UNISCO.

37. 示[礻](shì) 部 To show



古字形 𠄎

“示”是象形字，古文字描摹的是祭坛的形状。“示”的本义是祭祀，这一本义仅保留在部首意义中。“示”在现代汉语中的常用义是指让人看见或显现。作为部首，“示”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“礻”，俗称“示字旁”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“示”。示部字的多与祭祀、礼仪等意义有关。“祭”是会意字，由“肉”、“又”、“示”三个意符组成。“肉”表示牲肉，“又”表示手，“示”表示祭祀这一行为，“祭”的意思是以手持牲肉祭祀神灵，向神灵祈福。“福”是形声字，由“示”和“畱”组成，“畱”表声，也表义，有满、富足的意思，“福”的本义是指祭祀求福。会意字“视”是由“示”和“见”组成，意思是看见。



Ancient form 示

示 is a pictograph. Its ancient form depicts a stone table with food on top. The original meaning of 示 is *to offer sacrifices to gods or ancestors*. People make offerings to demonstrate, or *show* our reverence to the gods and the ancestors. Therefore, in modern Chinese, 示 means *to show or display*. As a radical 示 can be placed on the left side of a compound, where it is written as 礻. Most of characters with the 示 radical are related to religious ceremonies or ritual activities. The character 祭 (jì; *sacrifice*) is an ideograph with three radicals: 肉 (*meat*), 又 (*hand*), and 示 (*to show*). Together they mean that people use their hands to sacrifice animals as offerings. The character 福 (fú) is also a phonetic-semantic compound. The left part is 示 and the right part is a wine jar. People also offer wine to the gods to pray for happiness. Therefore, 福 means happiness. Another character that uses 示 is 视 (shì), which combines the radical “to show” with the radical “see” to form the meaning *to see*.



故事 Story

37. 告示 (Gàoshì) Bulletin 告 to tell 示 to show



In the Tang Dynasty, a court officer named Zhou Xing was assigned control of all prison affairs. He was an extremely brutal person and often created ruthless rules to mistreat his prisoners. Once, he posted a notice in front of the Court saying: “When they are



summoned to court, all defendants claim that they are treated unjustly, but once their heads are cut off, they will all keep quiet.” The purpose of this bulletin was to intimidate the defendants to make them plead guilty even if they were innocent.

38. 食[食 饣](shí) 部

Food



古字形

“食”是象形字，古文字描摹的是一个带盖子的食器形状：上部为三角形，像个食器的盖子，下部像是一只盛着食品的食品器。“食”字的本义是指供食用的物品。作为部首，“食”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“食”，简写作“饣”，俗称“食字旁”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“食”，如“餐”。食部的字一般都与食品或吃有关系。例如“饱”和“饿”是指吃的状态，“饺”和“饼”都是食品的名称。饺子和煎饼都是中国人最喜爱的食品。

Ancient form

食 is an pictograph. In the ancient script 食 looks like a bowl (the  part), with a cover (the  part), holding food (the middle section). The original meaning of 食 is food. As a radical, 食 is often placed on the left side of a compound and written as 食 or 饣 (simplified version). 食 can also appear at the bottom of a compound, for example, 餐. Characters with the 食 radical usually have meanings related to food or eating. For example, 饱 (bǎo; full) and 饿 (è; hungry) both refer to whether or not you have eaten; 饺 (jiǎo; dumpling) and 饼 (bǐng; pancake) are names for different types of food. Dumplings and fried thin pancakes are two of Chinese people's favorite foods.



故事 Story

38. 东食西宿 (Dōng shí xī sù) 东 east 食 eat 西 west 宿 sleep



Once upon a time, there was a beautiful young maiden of marriageable age. One day, a rich couple in the east side of town proposed that she marry their son. They said that although their son was quite plain, if she would marry him, she could enjoy endless wealth. The next day a poor couple from the west side of town proposed that she marry their son. They argued that their son was very generous and handsome. If she would marry their son, she would enjoy endless marital happiness. The girl accepted both proposals and said that she would eat with the wealthy Eastside family and sleep with the poor Westside family. As a result, she was rejected by both young men.

This story tells us that there is nothing perfect in this world. If one is too greedy and tries to get everything, then he/she may end up with nothing.



39. 酉(yǒu) 部 Alcohol



古字形 𠂔

“酉”是象形字，古文字描摹是酒器形状，本义是指酒。作为部首，“酉”通常位于汉字的左侧。酉部的字多与酒或因发酵而制成的食物有关。表示与酒有关的字：醒、醉。“醒”字从酉，本义是指人酒醒。特指发酵制成的食品，如：酱、醋等。

Ancient form 𠂔

酉 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 酉 indicates a wine jar. Therefore, the original meaning of 酉 is alcohol. As a radical, 酉 often appears either on the left side or at the bottom of a compound. Characters that contain the 酉 radical are usually associated with alcohol, fermented foods, and drinking. For example, 酒(jiǔ) means *wine*; 醉(zuì) means *drunk*; and 醒(xǐng) means *to wake up* (as from a drunken sleep). 酱(jiàng; *soy sauce*) and 醋(cù; *vinegar*) are both made through a process of fermentation, and so also contain the 酉 radical.



故事 Story

39. 酒仙李白 (Jiǔ xiān Lǐ Bái) The Wine Spirit Li Bai 酒 wine 仙 god 李白 the name of a famous Poet in the Tang Dynasty



李白 was a famous romantic poet in the Tang Dynasty, who was also referred to as a Wine Spirit. He himself claimed that "There are 360 days in a year, and one should drink 300 glasses of wine each day." Unlike most other poets, Li Bai produced even better poems after drinking. One day, Emperor Tang invited Li Bai to create a few new poems for the Peony Party the Emperor was holding to enhance the Emperor and Empress' enjoyment of the beautiful peonies. Li Bai told the Emperor that producing a few poems was not difficult as long as the Emperor could provide him with enough wine. After a few cups of wine, Li Bai quickly dashed off three beautiful poems. The emperor was very pleased with Li Bai's work, and ordered his servants to bring Li Bai a seven-treasure cup, which the Emperor himself filled with grape wine.



40. 八[ㄨˇ](bā) 部 Divide; Separate



古字形 丷

“八”是象形字，古文字像两条相背的弧线。这个形象表示的意义是分开、分别。“八”假借表示数字，是七加一之和。作为部首，“八”通常位于汉字的上面，写作“丷”，也作“八”；有时位于汉字的下面，写作“八”。八部的字多和切分、分别有关。“分”字上面是“八”，下面是“刀”，表示用刀分物的意思，引申指分别，例如“分离”。“半”字上面是“八”，意思是把物体一分为二，例如“一半”、“半百”；引申指事物的中间，例如“半夜”、“半山腰”。

Ancient form 丷

八 is an ideograph. The ancient form of it indicates two items that are separated—so it means *separate or apart*. 八 also means eight. This is a phonetic borrowing and has nothing to do with the original meaning of 八. As a radical, 八 can be placed on the top of a compound, either in its original form or upside down as 丷. Characters containing 八 usually relate to separation or a part of a whole. The character 分 (fēn) has two radicals. The top is 八 and the bottom is 刀. It suggests using a knife to cut something into pieces. Therefore, the character means “separation”. 半 (bàn; *half*) has 丷 on the top. It means to separate things into two equal halves. It appears in words such as 半夜 (bànyè; *midnight*)—half way through the whole night. 半山腰 (bànshānyāo)—midpoint to the mountain top.



故事 Story

40. 八仙过海 (Bā xiān guò hǎi) 八 eight 仙 immortals 过 cross 海 sea



The Eight immortals are legendary figures in Chinese folk stories. 八仙过海 is one story about the eight immortals recorded in a Ming Dynasty Chinese Novel *Journey to the East*. According to the story the eight immortals arrived at the Eastern Sea and needed to cross, but all they could see were turbulent waves surging and crashing. One of the eight immortals suggested that each of them throw a magic weapon into the sea to demonstrate their magic powers. They all agreed and each used their magic powers to cross the sea. Later, people began to use 八仙过海 to describe when individuals try to outshine each other in a display of talents.



第六课 页、巾、门、广、大、米、田、十、彳、革

41. 页[頁](xié; yè) 部 Head



古字形



“页”是象形字，古文字描摹了一个人的形状，突出了头部的细节。“页”本读 xié，本义是人头，“页”的本义仅保留在部首意义中。“页”读作“yè”，表示“篇”或“张”的意思，例如“活页”、“插页”、“扉页”等；用作量词时，“一页纸”是指纸正反面中的一面。作为部首，“页”通常位于汉字的右侧。页部的字多与人的头部、面部、颈部等意义有关。“顶”本是指头顶。“额”本指额头。“领”本是指脖子。北京一个著名的旅游景点——颐和园，“颐”字现在常用其调养、保养之意，之所以有“页”符，是因为“颐”本指人的腮颊或下巴，而一个人保养的好坏，是可以从这些部位上看起来。

Ancient form



页 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 页 (pronounced as xié) is a picture of a kneeling person with a huge head. Therefore 页 means head. In traditional characters 页 is written as 頁. In modern Chinese, 页 as an independent character has lost its meaning as head. It now is pronounced as

yè and refers to “pages” (of a book), or is used as a measure word. As a radical, 页 still retains the meaning of head. It often appears on the right side of a compound. Characters containing 页 often have meanings associated with the head, face, neck or prominent things (things situated at “the head”). For example, the original meaning of 顶(dǐng) is *the crown of head*, now it also means “peak”; 额(é) means *forehead*; and 领(lǐng) means *neck*. There is a famous imperial garden called 颐和园(Yíhé Yuán) in Beijing, China. It is known in English as “The Summer Palace.” The original meaning of 颐 is *cheek*. Its extended meaning is *taking good care of one’s health*, because a healthy person has bright cheeks.



故事 Story

41. 颐和园(Yíhé Yuán)

颐 Health 和 Harmony 园 garden (Summer Palace)



The Summer Palace is one of Beijing’s famous historical sites. Constructed in 1750, its original name was Qingyi Yuan (Garden of Clear Ripples). In 1860 Anglo-French Allied Forces razed the palace to the ground. The Qing Government started to rebuild the park in 1886. Two years later the reconstruction was complete and the garden was renamed as Yihe Yuan (Garden of Health and Harmony). This Yihe Yuan at that time was served as a summer resort for the Empress Dowager Cixi, and so came to be known as The Summer Palace. The palace was again ravaged by the Allied Forces of the Eight Powers, which



invaded China in 1900, and new repairs were made in 1902.

The palace covers an area of 2.9 square kilometers, three quarters of which is under water. The landscape is dominated primarily by Longevity Hill and Kunming Lake. The park's 70,000 square meters of ground space features a variety of palaces, gardens, and other fine examples of traditional Chinese architecture and landscape design. It is also well known for its large, priceless collection of cultural relics. In December 1998, UNESCO added The Summer Palace to its World Heritage List. If you are interested in the past 500 years of Chinese history, then the Summer Palace is a must-see!

42. 巾 (jīn) 部 Towel; cloth



古字形



“巾”是象形字，古文字像一条下垂的毛巾之形，本义是用于擦拭的毛巾。作为部首，“巾”有时位于汉字的左侧；有时位于汉字的下面；偶尔位于汉字的右侧，例如“帅”。巾部的字多与丝麻布等各类织品以及交换活动有关。“币”的本义指一种丝织品，引申指“钱币”。在古代男耕女织的社会中，“币”可能是因其便于携带而充当了商品交换的一般等价物，也是最早的货币之一。“幅”本指布帛等织物的宽度。“幅”又引申作量词，例如“一幅画”之“幅”，因为丝是用来画中国古代画的主要材料。

Ancient form



巾 is a pictograph. In the ancient script it looks like a hanging towel. The original meaning of 巾 is *towel or cloth*. As a radical, 巾 can appear on the left, right, or bottom of a compound character. The character 币 (bì) has 巾 on

the bottom. Its original meaning is *a kind of silk*. Since 币 was easy to carry, it was often used for trading. Therefore, 币 later evolved to mean “currency”. Another character that uses 巾 is 幅 (fú). Its original meaning is *the width of a piece of silk*. It later came to be used as a measure word for paintings, because in ancient China paintings were primarily done on silk.



故事 Story

42. 巾帼英雄 (Jīnguó yīngxióng)

巾帼 ancient woman's headdress 英雄 heroine



巾帼英雄 means a heroic woman. This saying comes from a story that took place in the Northern Song period (960–1127). China was invaded by the Liao army. The Song General sent two strong soldiers to steal a special wood called Subduing-Dragon Wood from the Muke Stockade to make shafts for axes. When they reached the stockade, the soldiers were captured by Mu Guiying, the daughter of the Chief of the Stockade. The Song General came to rescue his men, but he too was defeated by Mu Guiying. Later, when Mu Guiying learned that the Song army needed the Subduing-Dragon Wood to make weapons, she presented the wood to the general and also requested to join the army. Her request was approved. Mu Guiying led the army to fight against the invaders. Soon, the Song army returned in triumph. Mu Guiying was regarded as 巾帼英雄.



43. 门[門](mén) 部 Gate; Door



古字形 𠔁

“门”是象形字，古文字像两扇门对开之形。作为部首，“门”通常位于汉字的外围，俗称“门字框”。门部的字多与门、门径、方法等意义有关。“阅”是指在门内清点东西，引申指考查、视察；“阔”是指房间宽大，引申为面积宽。

Ancient form 𠔁

门 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 门 is a picture of a two-leaf door. The original meaning of this radical is *gate or door*. Therefore as a radical, it usually refers to doors. But it also can refer to “methods of access”—the function that doors provide, and by extension “methods”. The character 阅 (yuè) means to take stock and organize stuff inside a room. Its extended meaning is *to examine or to read*; 阔 means spacious room. Its extended meaning is broad or wide.



故事 Story

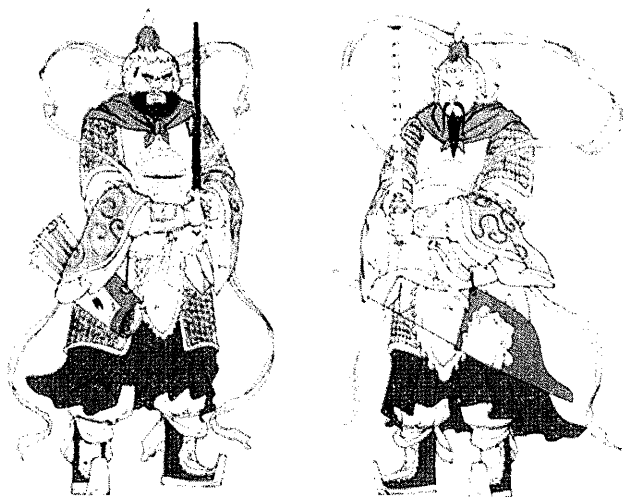
43. 门神 (Ménshén) 门神 Door-God



In Ancient China, on the evening of December 30 in Chinese Lunar calendar, people placed two carved peach-wood gods on either side of their

front door. They hoped that these two wooden gods would help to keep disasters away from the family. These two gods came to be known as the Door-Gods.

Why do Chinese ancestors use peach wood to carve the Door-Gods? It is said that the two gods were brothers who lived on a mountain that had a giant peach tree growing on its peak. Every morning, the two brothers would check on the hundreds of ghosts and evils in the world to see if they had done anything harmful to mankind. If they did, then the two brothers would punish them.



44. 广(yǎn;guǎng)部 Big house



古字形 广

“广”是象形字,古文字像依山崖建造的房屋之形。“广”读作“yǎn”,其本义指宽大的房屋。现代汉语中读音为“guǎng”的“广”字,是“廣”的简化字,所以和用作部首的“广”字不属于同一个字。作为部首,“广”通常位于汉字的左上部。广部字多与房屋的种类或结构有关。“府”最早是指储藏文书的地方;引申指“官府”(官员办理公事的地方)。“库”字原本指储存武器的地方;引申

指储存物品的地方,例如“仓库”。在上古时代,“庙”是祭祀祖先神的处所,例如“宗庙”;后来引申指供神佛的地方,例如“寺庙”;由此再引申指为纪念历史上著名人物而建造的庙宇,例如“孔庙”。

Ancient form 广

广 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 广 looks like a house built against hill, which is why we do not see a wall on the right side. As a radical, 广's pronunciation is yǎn. Its basic meaning is spacious house. In modern Chinese, there is a character 广 (read as guǎng) which is the simplification of 廣 (broad). While they are written the same way, the character 广 and the radical 广 are different in terms of pronunciation and meaning. The characters with the radical 广 often have meanings related to types of houses or buildings and their structures. 府 (fǔ) is a place to store documents. It also is used to refer to government buildings. 库 (kù) is a place to store weapons; now it also refers to all storage places. 庙 (miào) is a place to worship ancestry. It also refers to all temples, such as China's many Buddhist temples and memorial temples, such as The Temple of Confucius located in Shandong.



故事 Story

44. 广厦千万间 (Guǎngshà qiānwàn jiān)

广厦 mansions 千万 thousands 间 (a measure word for room)



The famous Chinese Poet, Du Fu (712–770) was born in Gong County of Henan Province during the Tang Dynasty. His poetry expressed his deep sympathy for the poor and his great dissatisfaction with the problematic society of his time. One of his poems titled 茅屋为秋风所破歌 *Song of My*

Cottage Unroofed By Autumn Gales described his poor living conditions and his wish for a better life for scholars like him. Here are a few lines from his poem:

安得广厦千万间

If I could get mansions covering ten thousand miles

大庇天下寒士俱欢颜

I could host all the poor scholars and make them smile

风雨不动安如山

In the wind and rain these mansions would stand like mountains high

呜呼何时眼前突兀见此屋

Alas! Should these houses appear before my eye

吾庐独破受冻死亦足

Frozen in my unroofed cot, content I would die



45. 大(dà) 部
Big



古字形 𡗗

“大”是象形字，古文字像伸开双臂的正面人形，引申指在体积、面积、数量、力量、规模、程度等方面超过一般或超过所比较的对象，与“小”相对。作

汉

字部首教程

为部首,“大”有时位于汉字的下面;有时位于汉字的上面或中间。大部的字多与人类或人事有关。“夫”由“大”和“一”构成,“大”,上面的“一”表示头发上插一根簪(zān)。在中国古代,男子成年时要行“冠礼”,之后要束发,故加“一”做标记,合起来的意思是成年男子;“天”古文字下面是大,上面是人头,小篆变成一横,本义指人头;引申指天空或位于顶端的。

Ancient form 𡗗

大 is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like a man with his arms stretching out side to side. The original meaning of 大 is big man. As a radical, it can be placed on the top or bottom, or in the middle of a compound. Characters with the 大 radical often have meanings related to people. The character 夫 (fū) consists of 大 and 一; 一 indicates a hairpin 簪 (zān). In ancient China, when a man was fully grown he attended a ceremony that marked his becoming an adult. After this ceremony he would bind his hair in a bun with a hairpin as a mark of adulthood. Therefore, 夫 means mature male. The character 天 is different from the character 夫. In 天 the 一 is on the top of 大. Here, 一 means *the head of a person*. Above a person's head is sky, so 天 means sky.



故事 Story

45. 雷声大,雨点小 (Léishēng dà, yǔdiǎn xiǎo)
雷 thunder 声 sound 大 loud, 雨 rain 点 drops 小 small



雷声大,雨点小 The thunder is loud but the raindrops are small. This idiom can be used to describe a situation in which much is said but little is

done. This is similar to English expression: great boast, small roast.



46. 米 (mǐ) 部 Rice



古字形 𥽿

“米”是象形字，古文字像细碎的米粒之形。“米”的本义是指谷物或其他植物去壳之后的子实。作为部首，“米”通常位于汉字的左侧，俗称“米字旁”，有时位于汉字的下面。米部的字多与米或粮食的种类有关。“粟”是中国北方的一种主要粮食作物，通称“谷子”。“粽”是用苇叶包裹糯米做成的一种多角形的食品。

Ancient form 米

米 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 米 depicts small grains scattered on the ground. The meaning of 米 is *unshelled grains*. As a radical, 米 appears on the left or bottom of a compound. Characters with the 米 radical often have meanings related to kinds of food or grains. For example 粟 (sù; *millet*) is a common crop in northern China. 粽 (zōng) is a kind of snack made from sweet rice.

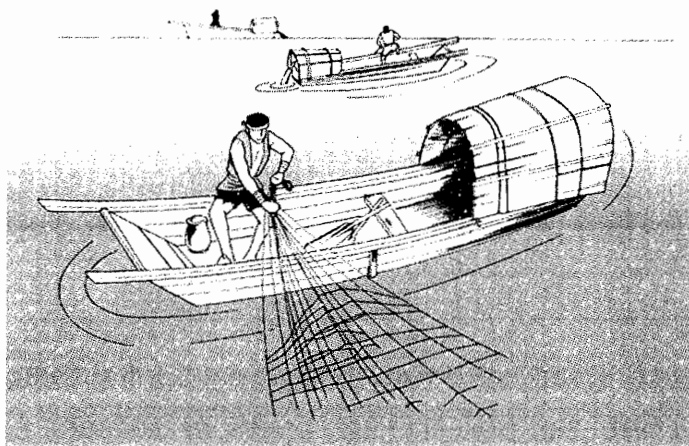


故事 Story

46. 鱼米之乡 (Yú mǐ zhī xiāng) 鱼 fish 米 rice 之 of 乡 town



鱼米之乡 means a land of fish and rice. It is used to describe a place that is rich in agricultural and fishing products, and the citizens do not need to worry about life's basic necessities. In China, the Yangzi River divides the land into two regions: Jiangbei (North of the River) and Jiangnan (South of the River). Jiangnan is a region in the lower Yangtze Valley, where the weather is mild and there is plenty of rain. Many small rivers are scattered over these vast plains, creating an excellent environment for agriculture and aquaculture. Chinese people refer to Jiangnan as 鱼米之乡.



47. 田 (tián) 部
Land; Field

古字形 田

“田”是象形字，古文字像一块块的农田。“田”的本义是耕种用的土地，引申指田野。作为部首，“田”通常位于汉字的左侧和上面，例如“畔”“界”；有时位于汉字的下面，例如“亩”。田部的字多与耕种、界线等意义有关。“苗”指田里生长的、未吐穗的庄稼，形状像草，即禾苗。“界”是形声字，从田介声，本义是指地界。“男”字由田和力构成，“田”就是田地，“力”即“耒”，是一种农具。用使用农具耕作于农田的形象来表示男子。

Ancient form 田

田 is a pictograph. The ancient form of this character looks like a tract of divided land. The basic meaning of 田 is *land*. It also refers to fields. As a radical, it appears either on the left, top, or bottom of a compound. The meaning of characters with the 田 radical often relate to farming, land boundaries, or field activities. For example, the character 苗 (miáo) refers to an immature crop and 界 (jiè) means *land boundaries*. The character 男 (nán) means *male*. It consists of two radicals 田 and 力. 力 stands for a tool that was used to plough the land. In ancient times, men worked in the field pushing the plough.





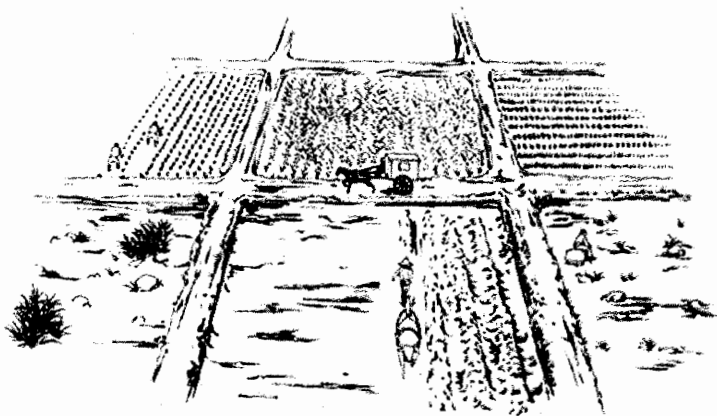
故事 Story

47. 井田制 (Jǐng tián zhì) The well-field system 井 well 田 land 制 system



In the Western Zhou Dynasty, all lands were owned by the emperor's family. In order to make it easy to loan the land to the Nobility, the land was divided into thousands of square pieces. Nine plots of land together were referred to as "one well" because they looked like the shape of a square Chinese well (井). The Nobility had the right to use the land, but not to sell or transfer it to others. They also had to pay a tax to the imperial family for using the land. The Nobility, of course, forced their peasant slaves to work in the fields. The well-field system has become a symbol of the oppressive feudal system in Chinese history.

井



48. 十 (shí) 部

Perfect; Many



古字形



“十”是指事字，古文字描摹的是结绳记数之象：用一个结表示十，后来一点变成了一横。“十”的本义是九加一之和。“十”虽然是一个实指的数字，但常用于虚指，有“多”或“全”的意思。作为部首，“十”位于汉字的左侧、上面、下面或右侧。十部字多与十足、多、全等意义有关。“十”加“十”是廿。“协”表示众多，简化为“协”。“协”字由“十”和“办”组成。“十”，表示众多，“办”表示同力，合起来表示众人同力才会和睦、融洽。

Ancient form



十 is an ideograph. The ancient script of 十 depicts a knot in a rope. Ancient Chinese used knots in ropes to keep a count of numbers. One knot meant ten—which is one meaning for this character. In addition to representing a concrete number, ten also implies *many*, *completeness*, and *perfection*. “十”plus“十”is “廿”(twenty). The character 协 (xié) is formed by combining 十 (many people) with 办 (strength). Together, it means *joint efforts*, *cooperation*, and *harmony*.



故事 Story

48. 十全十美 (Shí quán shí měi) Be perfect in every way
 十 ten 全 complete 十 ten 美 perfect



In the Zhou Dynasty, a doctor's payment was based the cure rate of his patients. If ten of his patients all recovered from their illnesses, then the doctor would get level-one payment. If, however, only nine or eight out of ten were cured, then the doctor would receive a level two payment, and so on. Later, 十全十美 began to be used to describe a perfect situation. It is similar to the English expression: the peak of perfection.



49. 彳 (chì) 部
Small steps

古字形 彳

“彳”是象形字，古文字像道路之形。“彳”的本义是慢步行走。“彳”现在只用作部首，一般不单独成字。作为部首，“彳”通常位于汉字的左侧，俗称“双人旁”。彳部的字多与走、道路等意义有关。“行”在现代汉语中是走的意思。“行”也有流通、流行的意思。“得”字的本义是得到、获得，从古文字字形来看，“得”由“彳”、“贝”、“手”构成，古代的“贝”曾用作货币，人在路上捡到贝也就是得到了钱财，所以“得”有所获的意思。“往”是形声字，“彳”是形旁，表示该字的字义。本义是去，到某个地方去，与“来”相对。

Ancient form 彳

彳 is an pictograph. The ancient form of 彳 looks like half of a crossroad. The basic meaning of 彳 is *to walk with small steps or to walk slowly*. In modern Chinese, 彳 is no longer an independent character. It appears only as radical in compounds.

Characters that contain the 彳 radical often have meanings related to walking or roads. 行 (xíng) means *to walk*. Its extended meanings are “to become popular” and “circulation”. The character 得 (dé) is formed by combining three radicals: 彳, 贝, and 手. As mentioned earlier, 贝 (*seashells*) were used as currency at one point in Chinese history. 得 represents a person who was walking on the road and picked up a seashell with his hand 手. Therefore, the meaning of 得 is “to gain.” 往 (wǎng) is a phonetic-semantic



compound. 彳 indicating the original meaning of the character, to go, which is opposite of 来, to come.



故事 Story

49. 彳 和 亍 (Chì hé chù)
彳 Chì 和 and 亍 chù



The commonly accepted meanings of the characters 彳 and 亍 are “small steps” and “stop walking” Respectively. Another translation for 彳 is to “step forward with left foot” and 亍 is “step forward with right foot.” These two characters are seldom used in modern Chinese. The combination of these two characters forms a new character 行. This character means “to walk.”

行



50. 革(gé) 部
Leather

古字形 𠩺

“革”是象形字，古文字描摹的是被剥下的兽皮之象：中间左右两边是剥兽皮的手，余下的部分是兽的头、身和尾。“革”的本义是指去毛的兽皮，引申指改变。作为部首，“革”通常位于汉字的左侧。革部的字多与皮革制品有关，例如“鞋”、“靴”、“靶”、“鞍”、“鞭”等字，其制作材料都和皮革有关系，虽然今天这些物品的制作材料已经不仅仅限于“皮革”了，但是“革”作为物质文化发展进程中的遗存却依然保留在汉字中。

Ancient form 𠩺

革 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 革 depicts an animal hide as it is peeled off the carcass. The top part is the head of the animal, the middle section is the body, and the bottom part is the tail. The basic meaning of 革 is *leather*. Its extended meaning is *to change or to transform*. As a radical, 革 stands on the left side of a compound to indicate the object represented by the character is made of leather. Some examples are: 鞋 (xié; *shoe*), 靶 (bǎ; *leather target*), 鞍 (ān; *saddle*), and 鞭 (biān; *leather whip*).





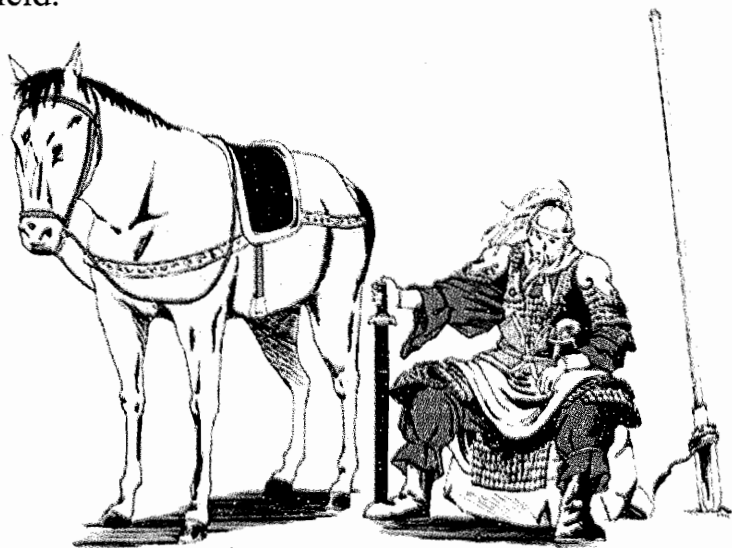
故事 Story

50. 马革裹尸 (Mǎ gé guǒ shī) 马 horse 革 hide 裹 wrap 尸 corpse



马革裹尸 literally means to be wrapped in a horse hide after death (figuratively—to die on the battle field). In the Eastern Han Dynasty (25–220), there was a great General named Ma Yuan. At that time the Han Nation was frequently invaded by the Huns. Ma Yuan was not afraid of death and he asked the Emperor to assign him an expedition. He said “A good man should go out to battle for his country. The best end is to be wrapped in horse hide after death.” He was a hero in his time. Later he died of illness in the battlefield.

Now we use 马革裹尸 to describe a soldiers' heroic and fearless spirit on the battlefield.



第七课 支、戈、尸、穴、力、舟、口、雨、厂、又

51. 支[攴](pū)部 Action by using hands



古字形

“支”是形声字，从又卜声，“支”的本义是指用手敲打物体。“支”在现在汉语中只用为部首，一般不单独成字。作为部首，“支”通常位于汉字的右侧，常写做“攴”，俗称“反文旁”。支部的字多与敲击或手的动作有关系。“敲”有打、击等意义。“教”是形声字，由“孝”和“攴”构成。在古代社会，家长为了让后代记住应有的责任，可能曾经使用过一定的强制手段，所以有“支”。“牧”字的本义是放牧牲畜，牧区以中畜牧为主要职业的人称为“牧民”。

Ancient form

支 is a phonetic-semantic compound. It consists of two radicals: 又 and 卜. 又 is a hand—which indicates the meaning of this character: using a hand to hit. 卜(bǔ) serves as the phonetic for this character, which is pronounced as pū. In modern Chinese, however, 支 is no longer an independent character but serves only as a radical in compounds. 支 usually stands on the right side of a compound and it is often written as 攴. The meanings of characters

containing 扌 are often related to actions that use the hands. For example, 敲 (qiāo) means *to knock, to beat, or to is a phonogram strike*; 牧 (mù) means *to tend or herd*. The character 教 (jiāo; *to teach*) is a phonetic-semantic compound, consists of 孝 and 攴. In ancient times, corporal punishment was a regular part of children's education, to force them to be obedient. Parents and teachers used their hands to punish. This is the reason we see the 扌 radical in 教.



故事 Story

51. 推敲 (Tuīqiāo) 推 to push 敲 to knock



Jia Dao was a great Poet who lived in the Tang Dynasty. One day, he wrote a poem that began: 鸟宿池边树, 僧敲月下门 (birds are resting on the tree by the pond, the monk is knocking on the door in the moonlight). At first, he was not quite sure whether he should use the character 推 or 敲 for the second line. He was so focused on his lines as he was walked down the street, that he accidentally ran into a government official's carriage. During that era this was a horrible offense. Fortunately, the official in the carriage was Han Yu, one of the great scholars of the Tang Dynasty. After Jia Dao explained the reason he had walked into the carriage, Han Yu not only forgave Jia Dao but also helped him figure out which word, 推 or 敲, was better for the poem. After some thought Han Yu suggested using 敲, because 敲 could evoke an aural image of sound, which could emphasize the silence of the night by contrast. Now we use 推敲 to describe weighing one's words or doing things after careful deliberation.



52. 戈 (gē) 部
Weapon

古字形



“戈”是象形字，古文字像长柄横刃的兵器之形。“戈”的本义是一种兵器，后泛指武器，成语“反戈一击”是说掉转武器向自己原来所属的阵营进行攻击。作为部首，“戈”通常位于汉字右侧。戈部的字多与兵器或战事有关。“戟”是古代的一种兵器，是由戈和矛组合而成的。“战”是指作战、打仗；“戒”像两手持戈形，表示戒备森严，引申指防备、警惕。“武”是会意字，从止从戈，表示威武、英武等意义，例如“武将”、“武夫”；又引申指干戈军旅之事。

Ancient form



戈 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 戈 is a picture of an ancient spear which was a sharp knife installed on the top of a long shaft. The original meaning of 戈 is *dagger-axe*. As a radical, it often appears on the right of a compound. The meaning of characters containing 戈 are often connected to weapons and war. A 戟 (jǐ) is another type of long-handled ancient weapon. It consists of a spear at the point with a battle-axe: affixed to the side. 战 (zhàn) means *fighting* or *battle*; The ancient form of the character 戒 (jiè) looks like two hands holding a 戈, which indicates its meaning—to *guard* or *take precautions*. The character 武 (wǔ) means *forces* or *to arm with weapons*.





故事 Story

52. 同室操戈 (Tóng shì cāo gē)
 同 same 室 room 操 operate 戈 dagger-axe
 (an ancient weapon)



This idiom is used to describe internal strife, such as when family members fight each other, or when members in the same work-unit work for their own interests rather than cooperating for the sake of the group. This is similar to the English expression: "A house divided against itself."



53. 尸 (shī) 部
 House; Corpse



古字形 𠂇

“尸”是象形字，古文字像人俯身屈膝之形。从出土文献的用字情况来看，“尸”是“夷”的早期字形。“夷”是上古时代中原华夏统治者对周边少数民

族的蔑称,“夷(尸)”字所描摹的这个俯身屈膝之人,实际就意味着“夷”应是向中原华夏俯首称臣的人。作为部首,“尸”通常位于汉字的左上面。尸部的字多与人体或动物等意义有关,例如“尾”字的本义是指人或动物的尾巴,“从头到尾”就是比喻自始至终的意思;又引申指事物主要部分以外的部分,例如“尾声”、“尾数”之“尾”。尸部的字都还与居住有关,例如“居”指人居住的地方;“屋”则指人居住的处所。

Ancient form 尸

尸 is a pictograph. The ancient script looks like a person who is bending over. The archeological studies show that 尸 is the early form of character 夷 (yí).

夷 is a denigrating epithet for ancient tribes in the east. In ancient times, the dominant Han people referred to minorities or foreigners as 夷. The ancients used the image of a bending body to signify the 夷 perhaps because they believed the 夷 should bow and submit to the Han. Characters containing the 尸 radical often have meanings related to human or animal bodies, or housing. For example, 尾 (wěi) means *tail*; 居 (jū) means *a place that people live in*; 屋 (wū) means *house or cottage*.



故事 Story

53. 碎尸万段 (Suì shī wàn duàn)

碎 break 尸 corpse 万 ten thousand 段 piece



This idiom is used to express feelings of extreme hatred towards an

enemy. It means you want to tear their corpse into thousands of pieces.



54. 穴 (xué) 部 Hole; Cave; Den



古字形 𡩺

“穴”是形声字，从宀八声，本义是洞穴。作为部首，“穴”通常位于汉字的上面。穴部的字多与和洞穴、房屋等意义有关。“突”是会意字，从穴从犬，犬从洞穴中窜出，这种情景给人的感觉显然有些“突然”。“窗”是指房屋里用来换气透光的装置，“同窗”是指在一起读书的同学。穴部的字还与窘迫有关。“穷”是会意字，从穴从力，力在穴下被限制，有劲使不出，表示穷尽，完结的意思，引申指缺乏财物。

Ancient form 𡩺

穴 is a phonetic—semantic compound. 宀 (mián; house) is the semantic radical while 八 indirectly indicates its pronunciation. The original meaning of this radical is *hole, cave, or den* within a house. As a radical, 穴 stands on

the top of a compound. Characters with 穴 have meanings related to houses or holes. The character 突 (tū; *sudden*) is an ideograph consisting 穴 and 犬. It depicts a dog darting *suddenly* out from a cave. The character 窗 means *window* (a *hole* in the wall of a *room*). The character 穷 is an ideograph consisting of the 穴 and 力 radicals. 力 (lì) is a person's strength. When in a hole a person's strength is limited or useless, which engenders feelings of hopelessness and helplessness. Therefore, 穷 means *limited*. Its extended meaning is *poverty*.

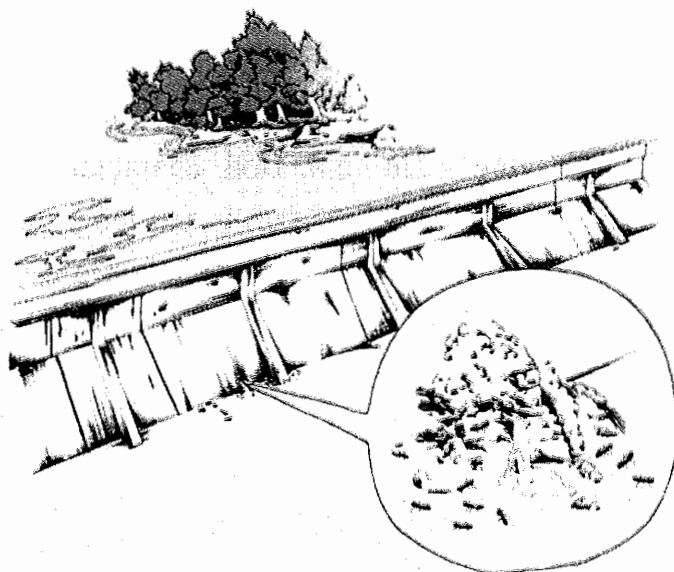


故事 Story

54. 千里之堤，溃于蚁穴 (Qiān lǐ zhī dī, kuì yú yǐ xué)
 千 thousand 里 mile 之 of 堤 dyke, 溃 collapse 于 from
 蚁 ant 穴 hole



千里之堤，溃于蚁穴 means that one ant hole may cause the collapse of a thousand miles of dyke. This idiom is a warning that a slight negligence can lead to a great disaster. It is similar to the English expression—a small leak will sink a great ship.



55. 力(lì)部 Strength



古字形 𠂇

“力”是象形字，古文字像耒的形状，耒是古代用于耕田的农具。用耒耕种须用力气，所以“力”的基本义是体力、气力。作为部首，“力”通常位于汉字的右侧或下面，例如：“功”、“努”。力部的字多与力气和力量有关系。“劳动”都是“力”部字。“劣”是会意字，由“力”和“少”构成，意思是弱小，引申指不好的事物。

Ancient form 𠂇

力 is an ideograph. The ancient form of 力 looks like a ploughshare. Peasants needed to use their own strength to plough the land. Therefore, 力 means strength. As a radical, 力 is often placed either on the right side or at the bottom of a compound. For example, 功 (gōng) means *achievement* and 努 (nǔ) mean to *put forth one's strength*. Both characters in the word 劳动 (láodòng; *to work*) have the 力 radical. 劣 (liè) is an ideograph which consists of 力 and 少 (shǎo; *few or lack*). Its original meaning is *weak*. Its extended meaning is *inferior or low quality*.





故事 Story

55. 手无缚鸡之力 (Shǒu wú fú jī zhī lì)

手 hand 无 no 缚 truss up 鸡 chicken 之 of 力 strength



手无缚鸡之力 literally means “He/she lacks the strength to truss a chicken.” This idiom is used to express that a person is very weak, either physically or psychologically, and that he/she is unable to get things done.



56. 舟 (zhōu) 部 Boat



古字形 

“舟”是象形字，古文字描摹的是一只船的形状：两边像船帮，中间的线条代表船头、船舱和船尾。作为部首，“舟”通常位于汉字的左侧。舟部的字多与船或航行有关。“船”是重要的水上交通运输工具，“舵”指船上掌握方向的设备。“航”原来指行船，后来也用来指飞行。

舟 is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like a boat with two hollow sections—representing the hold. As a radical, it often stands on the left side of a compound. Characters containing 舟 tend to have meanings related to water transportation or transportation in general. 船 (chuán) means *boat or ship*; 舵 (duò) means *helm*. The original meaning of 航 (háng) is *to sail*. In modern Chinese, it also means *to fly* (sail in the sky).



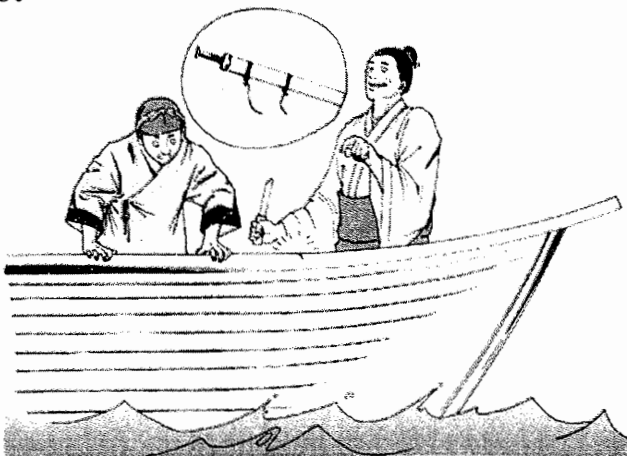
故事 Story

56. 刻舟求剑 (Kè zhōu qiú jiàn) 刻 mark 舟 boat 求 seek 剑 sword



Once upon a time, a gentleman with a sword rode a ferry across a river. Unfortunately, when they reached the middle of the river his sword unexpectedly fell into the water. This gentleman immediately made a mark on the edge of the moving boat and said “This is where my sword fell in.” After the ferry reached the far bank of the river, he jumped into the river to look for his sword under the spot where he made the mark earlier. Of course, he was unable to find the sword.

This idiom is used to describe a person who is ridiculously rigid and takes measures without regard to changes in circumstance.



57. 口 (wéi) 部
Enclose

古字形 口

“口”是象形字，古文字像回环之形。“口”的本义是将四周拦挡起来。作为部首，“口”通常位于汉字的外围，写作“口”，俗称“国字框”。口部的字多与包围等意义有关。“围”是形声字，从口韦声，意思是环绕。“囚”是会意字，从人在口中，用作名词时，指被拘禁的人，例如“囚犯”；用作动词时，指拘禁、囚禁，例如“被囚”。“困”也是会意字，从木在口中，指处于艰难痛苦或无法摆脱的环境中。

Ancient form 口

口 is a pictograph. The ancient script of 口 looks like an encircling wall.

Its meaning is to enclose. Characters with the 口 radical often have meanings related to enclosures. 围 (wéi) is a phonetic-semantic compound. 韦 (wéi) inside 口 indicates the pronunciation of the character, which is “wéi.” The meaning of this character is *to enclose or surround*. Some other characters that use the 口 radical are 囚 (qiú), which means *imprison*, and 困 (kùn), which means *to be stranded*.



故事 Story

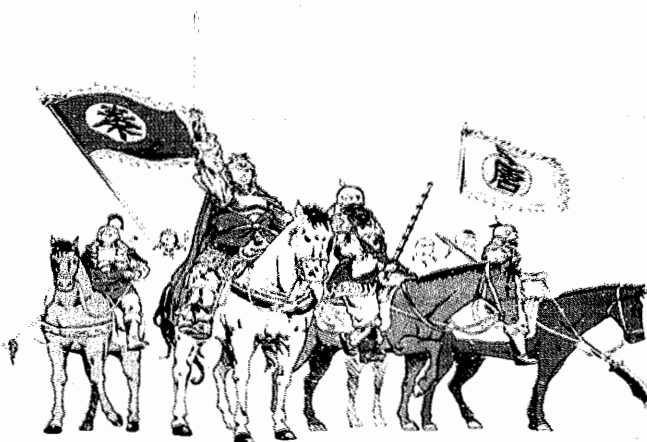
57. 围城打援 (Wéi chéng dǎ yuán) 围 besiege 城 city 打 attack 援 relief troops



In Chinese military history, there was a classic battle named 虎牢之战—the Battle of Hulao.

It was in the third year of the Emperor Tang Wude's reign (618–626). The emperor was still new and the Central Government was not very strong. There were frequent uprisings. Li Shimin, King of the Qin State (who later became the second emperor of the Tang Dynasty) directed his army to attack the rebels in the City of Luoyang. But Luoyang's fortifications were very strong. Li's soldiers were not able to get into the city. So he put the city under siege so that the enemy's food and supplies would be cut off. In the meantime, another uprising had taken place in the city of Hulao. The rebels there intended to storm in and rescue Luoyang. King Li decided to leave a small portion of his army in Luoyang to continue the siege and take the rest of his soldiers to fight the would-be relief troops in Hulao. After a few months of stalemate, Li Shimin devised a trick to lure the relief troops from the city of Hulao. His trick worked, and he destroyed them. Soon, the starving enemy in Luoyang also surrendered.

The Battle of Hulao is heroic story of the 24-year-old Li Shimin defeating two sets of rebels with one battle. He is remembered for his strategy of besiege the left and attacking the right.



58. 雨[雨](yǔ) 部
Rain

古字形 𩇔

“雨”是象形字，古文字描摹的是天上落雨的情景。作为部首，“雨”通常位于汉字的上面。雨部的字多与天气或自然现象有关。下雨时，天空中伴随着闪电而传来的强大声音叫做“雷”。深秋季节，附着在地面或植物上面的微细的白色结晶称为“霜”；冬季摄氏零度以下时，由空中降下的冰晶叫做“雪”。雪洁白而光亮，因此，“雪”又引申指像雪一样白或像雪一样亮的东西。“零”是形声字，从雨令声，本义是指雨徐徐而下，引申指草木花叶的凋谢。“零”还有两个十分常用的义项：一是零碎，一是数学上的零数。

Ancient form 𩇔

雨 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 雨 depicts falling rain. The meaning of 雨 is *rain or to rain*. As a radical, 雨 often appears on the top of a compound character. Characters with the 雨 radical often have meanings related to weather and meteorological phenomena such as 雷 (léi; *thunder*), 霜 (shuāng; *frost*), and 雪 (xuě; *snow*). The character 零 (líng) is a phonetic-semantic compound. The bottom part 令 indicates its pronunciation. The original meaning of this character is *to rain continuously*. The character 零 has been borrowed to indicate other meanings such as *withered, fragmentary, or zero*.



故事 Story

58. 呼风唤雨 (Hū fēng huàn yǔ) 呼 summon 风 wind 唤 call for 雨 rain



In the Ya'an area of Sichuan Province there is a mountain with an ancient well at its peak. According to the local chronicles', this well could summon the wind and call forth the rain whenever people removed its cover. Local people considered the well to be a magical gift from the gods. Because of this, the well has become the subject of national legend.

Modern scientific study has provided a possible explanation to this ancient myth. Due to geographic location, the air in the area is very moist, and during most of the year, this area is quite rainy. So the well does not cause the rain, it is simply the local climate. It is possible that occasionally when local people removed the cover of the well, it coincidentally started rain. This may be why the well is afforded magical powers in the local historical records.

Now we use 呼风唤雨 to describe mankind's ability to control the forces of nature. It is also used to describe someone who is very capable of stirring up trouble.



59. 厂 (hǎn; chǎng) 部

House; Shelter



古字形 𠩺

“厂”是象形字，古文字像山崖之形状，有人认为其本义是没有墙壁或只有一面墙壁的房屋。部首“厂”读作“hǎn”，现代汉语中读作“chǎng”的“厂”字，是“廠”的简化字，所以和用作部首“厂”不属于同一个字。“厂”(hǎn)现在只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“厂”位于汉字的上面。厂部的字与房屋有关。“厢”是指供人居住的地方，特指在正房前面东西两旁的房屋，又引申指具有房屋特征的地方，例如戏院或影院里特意隔开的座位叫“包厢”，车里容纳人或货的地方叫“车厢”。“厅”是指聚会或招待客人用的大房间。“厦”是高大的屋子。

Ancient form 𠩺

𠩺 is a pictograph. Its ancient form looks like a cliff, though some scholars argue it represents a room with the right wall missing. As a radical it is pronounced as hǎn. Now the simplification of a different character, 廠 (chǎng; *factory*), is 厂—identical in form to the radical 厂. However, the radical hǎn is different from chǎng in terms of both pronunciation and meaning. 厂(hǎn) no longer appears as an independent character in modern Chinese. It is used only as a radical in compounds. Characters with the 厂 radical often have meanings related to housing. 厢 (xiāng) refers to *the side rooms in a big house*. 厅 (tīng) means *hall* and 厦 (shà) means *big building or house*.



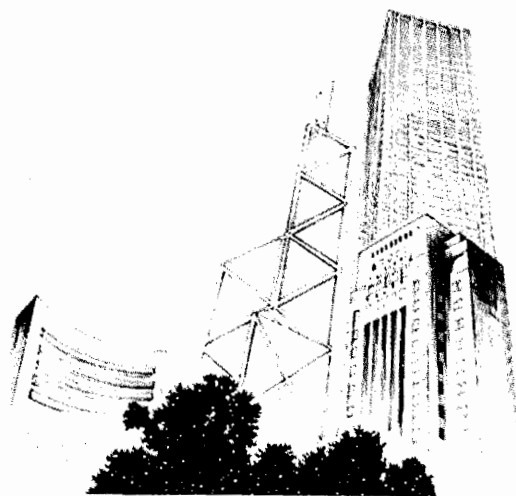
故事 Story

59. 高楼大厦 (Gāo lóu dà shà) 高 high 楼 building 大 large 厦 mansion



Which city holds the densest concentration of skyscrapers in the world? The answer is Hong Kong. Between Wanzhai 湾仔 and Zhonghuai 中环, an area a little more than a mile wide, is regarded as the area with the greatest concentration of skyscrapers in the world. A few of them can be considered global landmarks and symbols of Hong Kong's development.

One of these buildings is the 汇丰银行 (HSBC). Built in the fifties, it was the first high building with a full-steel structure. It was very popular among the people of Hong Kong. Another building, the 合和大厦 (Hopewell Mansion), was built in the seventies. The round building is the first in Hong Kong to feature a revolving restaurant on top. It quickly became a must-see spot for Hong Kong tourists. In the eighties, because of its unique swordshape design, 中银大厦 (the Bank of China Tower) became very popular. In the nineties, many new skyscrapers were built. Among them, 国际金融中心大厦 the International Finance Centre, quickly replaced 新中银大厦 and as the tallest building in Hong Kong. This building has 88 stories and is 415 meters (1,362 feet) tall. If you have a chance to go to Hong Kong, do not forget to visit these skyscrapers.



60. 又 (yòu) 部
Hand

古字形 𠂇

“又”是象形字，古文字像右手的形状。表示“右手”的意思，后来写作“右”。“又”被借用作副词，表示动作行为的重复或继续。作为部首，“又”有时位于汉字的下面，有时位于汉字的左侧或右侧。又部的字多与手或手的动作有关。“反”是个会意字，从厂从又，“厂”在此表示山崖，“厂”和“又”放在一起，表示的意思是用手攀登山崖，引申为翻转的意义。“取”是指用手获取；“受”是用手接纳。

Ancient form 𠂇

又 is a pictograph. The ancient script of 又 looks like a hand. The original meaning is *right hand*. Later, the character 右 (yòu) was invented to represent *right*, 又 is also used as an adverb to indicate the repetition of (an action). This meaning has no connection with its original meaning as hand. As a radical, 又 may appear in the left, right side and bottom. Characters containing 又 often have meanings related to hands or the action of hands. The character 反 (fǎn) is an ideograph consisting 厂 and 又. 厂 means cliff. Together, it is 反 which means *climbing a cliff*. Its extended meaning is *to turn over*. The character 取 (qǔ) means *to get things with hands*. The character 受 (shòu) means *to receive things with hands*.





故事 Story

60. 无功不受禄 (Wú gōng bú shòu lù) 无 no 功 contribution 不 not 受 receive 禄 reward



Once, Confucius visited Emperor Qi. The Emperor wanted to bestow on Confucius a piece of land, but Confucius declined. When his students asked him why he explained, "I heard that a gentleman receives rewards only if he has made a contribution. Today, I paid a visit to Emperor Qi to present my ideas. Emperor Qi did not accept my ideas, but granted me a piece of land. He really does not understand me." Later Confucius left the Qi State.

Now, we use 无功不受禄 to refer a noble person who is honest and clean in performing his official duties.



第八课 牛、皿、火、羽、羊、弓、歹、小、欠、子

61. 牛[𠂔 𠂔](niú) 部 Cattle



古字形 𠂔

“牛”是象形字，古文字像正面的牛头的形状，并突出了两只牛角翘起的特征。“牛”是六畜之一。中国古代，牛除了用作耕作之外，还有一个最重要的用途，就是用作祭品祭祀神灵。古人认为牛是所有祭品中的上品，因此，凡是隆重祭奠，牛是不可缺少的。古代祭牲的专用名称为“牢”，中间的“牛”字成为祭牲的代表。“牺”、“牲”是祭神祀祖所用的祭品，也是以“牛”为代表。作为部首，“牛”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“𠂔”，俗称“牛字旁”；位于汉字上面时写作“𠂔”例如“告”（原义牛撞人）；位于汉字的下面时写作“牛”。牛部的字多和牛或牲畜有关，“特”字从牛寺声，本义是指雄性的牛。用作形容词，表示独特、突出的意思。“犊”本义就是指小牛。

Ancient form 𠂔

牛 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 牛 outlines the head of an ox. Therefore, the meaning of 牛 is *cattle*. In ancient China, cows were one of

the six domestic animals. The other five were pig, goat, horse, fowl, and dog. In addition to farming, 牛 were used for important sacrificial offerings in worship. The ancient Chinese people considered 牛 as the best animal for sacrifices. Therefore, the character 牢 (láo) which original signified “animals used as sacrificial offerings,” has 牛 as its radical. Later, 牢 began to be used to refer to *fold*. As a radical, when 牛 stands on the left side of a character, it is written as 牝, such as in the characters 犊 (dú; *young cattle*) and 特 (tè; the original meaning of this character is *bull*). When 牛 is placed on the top of a compound, it is written as 𠂔, as in the character 告 (the original meaning of this character is—*an ox run into a person*). In modern Chinese, it means *to tell or to announce*.



故事 Story

61. 归马放牛 (Guī mǎ fàng niú) 归 return 马 horse 放 release 牛 ox

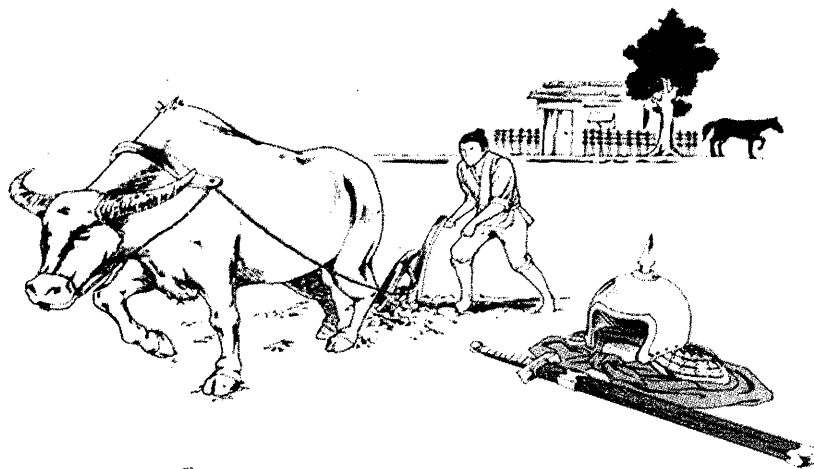


It was said that the last Emperor in the Shang Dynasty led a life of shameless indulgence. His extravagance provoked voices of discontent throughout the empire. A person named Ji Fa mobilized the people and the army to rebel and overthrow the Shang Emperor. Soon the whole country was embroiled in war. Because the Emperor had already lost the confidence of the people, his army was quickly overcome. Defeated, the emperor he decided to commit suicide. With his death, the Shang Dynasty ended forever.

Ji Fa established the Zhou Dynasty and became the first emperor of Zhou. He announced to his people that the war was ended and the country should restore peace. In his announcement, he said “We should now lay down our arms and construct a civil administration. We should return the war horses to the south of Hua Mountain and release the war cattle into the Tiaolin field.” This means that Emperor Ji wanted those horses and cattle recruited for the war to return to agricultural use in their original lands.



归马放牛 now is used to describe the situation in which war has ended and peace is being restored.



62. 皿 (mǐn) 部 Container



古字形 

“皿”是象形字，古文字像一个圆足的大口容器，本义是盛饭食的器具的总称。作为部首，“皿”通常位于汉字的下面。皿部的字多与器具有关，“盘”本是盛水用的容器，后来泛指浅而开口很大的盛物的器具；“益”是会意字，从皿从水，本义是指器皿中的水满后溢出、漫出，后用作名词引申指好处、利益；“盗”是会意字，从次从皿，是说看见别人的好东西，羡慕地流口水，于是便生盗窃之心。

Ancient form 

皿 is a pictograph. The ancient form of this character is a picture of utensil for storing or cooking food. As a radical, 皿 often is placed on the bottom of a compound. Characters with the 皿 radical often relate to cooking

or kitchen utensils. The character 盘 (pán) originally meant *vessel for water*. Now it can be used to refer to any type of kitchen utensil with a wide-open top. 益 (yì) is an ideograph consisting of 皿 and 水. Its basic meaning is *overflowing water*. Its extended meaning is *benefits*. 盗 (dào) which means *to steal or to rob* also is an ideograph. This suggests when people see the delicious food in others' plates, envy and desire may drive one to steal it.



故事 Story

62. 杯盘狼藉 (Bēi pán láng jí) 杯 cup 盘 plate 狼 wolf 藉 attack



This expression describes the scene after a feast, when the cups and plates are strewn half-hazard across the table. It also suggests that the people who just ate there are ill-mannered and uncivilized.



63. 冫 [冫] (bīng) 部
Ice

古字形 𠂆

“冫”是象形字，古文字描摹的是水凝结成冰以后的纹理。“冫”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“冫”通常位于汉字的左侧，写作“冫”，俗称“两点水”；有时位于汉字下面，例如“寒”。冫部的字多与冰或寒冷等意义有关，“冰”字最初写作“冫”，表示水凝结之义。后来出现了“凝”字，“冰”字就专门用来指零度以下水凝结成的固体。冰给人的感觉是凉爽或寒冷，所以有“冰凉”、“冰冷”等词语。

Ancient form 𠂆

冫 is a pictograph. The ancient form of it depicts the veins that appear in the ice of frozen bodies of water. However, 冫 is no longer an independent character in modern Chinese. As a radical, 冫 often stands on the left side of a compound and is written as 冫, such as in 冰 (bīng; ice), which indicates that the water, 水, is frozen. 冰 also implies cold or cool. Therefore, all the characters in the words 冰凉 (bīngliáng; cold as ice) and 冰冷 (bīnglěng; frigid as ice) have 冫. Sometimes 冫 appears at the bottom of a compound, such as in the character 寒 (hán; cold).



故事 Story

63. 冰灯 (Bīng dēng) 冰 ice 灯 lights/lanterns



If you travel to northern China during the winter, you can see a dazzling array of lighted ice sculptures. Local people call these sculptures 冰灯. Ice sculpture is a popular art form in the area. The city of Harbin holds a grand Ice Light Festival every year.

Harbin's Ice Light Festival originated in early sixteenth century, but it was not until 1985 that the city decided to hold an official Harbin International Ice Festival every year. Since then, the festival has grown into a massive event. Many teams from countries such as Canada, Japan, France, Russia, and South Africa come to the festival to demonstrate their exquisite ice-sculpting skills. The event draws millions of tourists from all over the world. The festival starts on January fifth and lasts until the end of February. During the festival, you can see lighted ice sculptures of all kinds, such as lions, tigers, eagles, dragons, Chinese lanterns, and sometimes European style churches and pavilions. Their colored lights are especially magnificent in the evening.



64. 羽(yǔ) 部
feather

古字形 𦇧

“羽”是象形字，古文字像羽毛的形状，特指鸟翅膀上的长毛，后来泛指鸟的羽毛。作为部首，“羽”位于汉字的右侧、上面或下面，例如“翻”、“翼”、“翁”。羽部的字有的与鸟的翅膀有关；有的与鸟飞行的动作有关。“翅”是形声字，从羽支声，本义为鸟类、昆虫的翅膀。“翻”是形声字，从羽番声，本义是指鸟儿飞，引申指位置变动、改变的意思。“翔”是形声字，从羽羊声，本义为鸟儿不扇动翅膀盘旋而飞。后来，则指鸟类或虫类等用翅膀在空中往来活动。

Ancient form 𦇧

羽 is a pictograph. Its ancient script looks like a feather. As a radical, 羽 can appear on the right, top, or bottom of a compound. Characters with the 羽 radical often have meanings related to birds, bird behaviors, or flying object. For example 翻 (fān; *to turn over*), 翼 (yì; *wing*), 翁 (wēng; *bulbul*—a type of Chinese songbird) all contain the 羽 radical. The character 翅 (chì) originally meant *the wings of birds or flying insects*. The original meaning of 翻 (fān) refers to the change of body position when a bird is flying. Its extended meaning is *to turn over or to change*. The original meaning of 翔 (xiáng) is a bird circling in the sky without spreading its wings. It now also refers to any kind of flying position.





故事 Story

64. 积羽沉舟 (Jī yǔ chén zhōu)

积 accumulate 羽 feather 沉 sink 舟 boat



Feathers are very light, but even they can combine to create a heavy enough load to sink a boat. 积羽沉舟 describes the situation in which tiny things gather to create a mighty force.



65. 羊 (yáng) 部

Goat; Sheep



古字形



“羊”是象形字,古文字像羊头的正面形状,并突出了羊角的特征。作为部首,“羊”有时位于汉字的右侧或左侧,例如“群”、“羚”;有时位于汉字的上

面,例如“羔”、“羞”。羊部的字多与羊、吉祥等意义有关。与羊有关的,例如“羔”,指未满一岁的小绵羊。而“吉祥”的意义,则突出反映在“祥”、“美”、“善”三个字中。“祥”字本义是指吉凶的预兆,后来则专门表示好的征兆,也就是“吉祥”之义。古人以羊为主要的副食品,肥壮的羊吃起来味道很好,所以从羊从大的“美”字的本义就是味道美。“善”是会意字,从言从羊。因为羊是吉祥的象征,所以“善”字本义就是指吉祥,引申指美好、善良的行为和品质。

Ancient form

羊 is a pictograph. The ancient script of 羊 outlines the head of a goat. As a radical, it appears on either the left or right side of a compound such as in the characters 群 (qún; *herd of sheep*) and 羚 (líng; *antelope*). It can also appear on the top of a compound, such as in 羔 (gāo; *lamb*) and 羞 (xiū). The original meaning of 羞 is *to sacrifice a sheep to pay tribute*. In modern Chinese, 羞 means *shy* or *ashamed*. Characters containing 羊 refer to sheep or to things associated with goodness. For examples, 祥 (xiáng) means *auspicious*, 美 (měi) means *beautiful*, and 善 (shàn) means *kindness*.



故事 Story

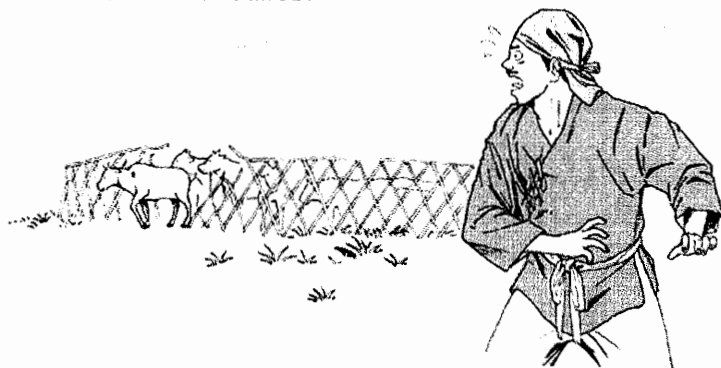
65. 亡羊补牢 (Wáng yáng bǔ láo) 亡 lose 羊 sheet 补 repair 牢 fold



During the Warring States Period, there was a minister of the Chu State named Zhuang Xin. He admonished the emperor of the Chu State for his self-indulgence. He said that if the emperor continued to sacrifice state business for personal enjoyment, then the country would soon be conquered

by other states. The Emperor was not happy to hear this and considered Zhuang's words alarmist. Dismayed, Zhuang told the emperor that he could not bear to watch the impending destruction of the Chu state, and so he would have to leave immediately. Five months after Minister Zhuang left Chu, the State Qin attacked. With the state of Chu in dire peril, the emperor of Chu sent for the minister Zhuang to return and help save the country. Zhuang returned, saying, "it is not too late to mend the fold even after the sheep is lost..."

亡羊补牢 is used to indicate that although there are problems, it is not too late to take remedial measures.



66. 弓(gōng) 部 Bow



古字形



“弓”是象形字，古文字像弓张开的形状。“弓”的本义是指一种射箭或打弹用的武器，引申指形状或作用像弓一样的器具。作为部首，“弓”通常位于汉字的左侧或下面，如“张”、“弩”。弓部的字多与弓有关，或用来表示弓的种类，例如“弧”、“弩”；或表示弓的部分，例如“弦”；或表示用弓的动作，例如“张”、“弛”。其中，“弧”字是形声字，从弓瓜声，在古代指的是一种木弓，引申指圆或椭圆一部分的形状，即“弧形”。“弦”是会意字，左为“弓”，右为“玄”，本义指用丝做成的系在弓背两端的、能发箭的绳状物的“弓弦”。

Ancient form

弓 is a pictograph. The ancient script shows a drawn bow. As a radical, 弓 often is placed on the left side or the bottom of a compound. For example, in the character 张 (zhāng) 弓 appears on the left. The original meaning of 张 is to draw a bow; its extended meaning is to open or expand. Characters that contain the 弓 radical often signify types of bows, the parts of a bow, or how to use a bow. For instance, 弧 (hú) means the curved part of a bow, 弦 (xián) means bowstring, 弩 (nǚ) means crossbow and 弛 (chí) means to release the tension of a bow.



故事 Story

66. 杯弓蛇影 (Bēi gōng shé yǐng) 杯 cup 弓 bow 蛇 snake 影 shadow



In the Jin Dynasty, a gentleman named Yue Guang invited a friend to come have a drink at his home. After the first sip, when Yue Guang's friend replaced his wine cup on the table, he noticed a tiny little snake coiled in his cup. Although this made Yue's friend uneasy, he still finished the whole cup of wine. The next day, Yue Guang heard that his friend had become ill



after drinking wine with him. Yue Guang was horrified and went to see his friend and ask why he thought the wine had made him sick. After hearing his friend's story about the little snake in the wine cup, Yue Guang hurried home to investigate. After much searching, he realized that the bow hanging on his dining room wall, cast a shadow that reflected in the wine cup. The shadow looked just like a snake. He hastily invited his friend to his home again and explained the illusion. When his friend realized that there was no snake in the wine cup he was very relieved and his sickness disappeared.

Now, we use 杯弓蛇影 to describe a person who is very suspicious and over-sensitive.

67. 歹[殳](è; dǎi) 部 Remains; Skeleton



古字形 

“歹”本写作“𣦵”是象形字，古文字像剔去肉后残留的骨头的形状，本义是指残骨。古音读作 è，现代读作 dǎi。作为部首，“歹”通常位于汉字的左侧，例如“殆”(dài; dangerous)、“歿”(mò; die)。歹部的字多与死亡、坏或不吉利等意义有关，例如“死”、“残”。其中“死”是会意字，从人从𣦵，是说人死之后，魂魄就会脱离形体，全部器官也停止了活动，所以本义就是生命的终止。

Ancient form 

歹 is a pictograph. Its original pictograph form is 𣦵—as depicted in the ancient script. It looks like a human skeleton. The ancient pronunciation of 𣦵 is è. Now 𣦵 is written as 歹 and read as dǎi. As a radical, 歹 is often placed

on the left side of compound characters that have meanings associated with death and bad things. For example, (残 cán; *injure, deficient*). The character 死 is an ideograph consisting of 人 and 歹. The image depicts a soul leaving a body. So the meaning of this character is *death*.



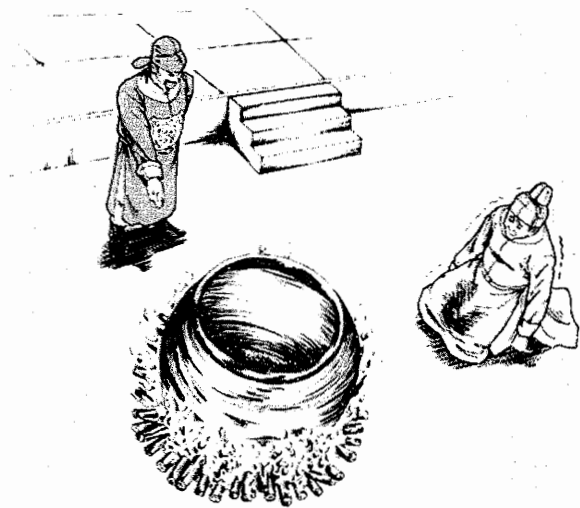
故事 Story

67. 为非作歹 (Wéi fēi zuò dǎi) 为 commit 非 crime 作 do 歹 evil



After Emperor Tang Gaozong passed away, his wife Wu Zetian came into power. She discovered that a corrupt official, Zhou Xing, was plotting a rebellion against her. Wu Zetian decided to punish him. She asked the state judicial officer to handle this matter. The judicial officer invited Zhou Xing to the court and asked him a question: "Say there was a criminal who would not admit his crime. What should I do to get him to confess?" Zhou said, "This is easy, you just bring in a big hot oven and roast him. That would make him admit his wrongdoings!" The judicial officer immediately ordered his subordinate to bring in a hot oven. Then he said to Zhou Xing, "You are charged with corruption and evil conduct. You are also charged with conspiring to usurp power. Shall I do as you suggested—have you roasted in the oven?" Scared to death, Zhou Xing promptly knelt and pleaded guilty to all charges. The moral of this story is that an evil person will be paid back with his own coin.

Please note, this story is borrowed from the idiom 请君入瓮 (Please step into the vat) which means to invite your enemy to try what you have devised against them.



68. 小[灬](xiǎo) 部
Small



古字形 𠂔

“小”是会意字，古文字以沙粒表达“小”意思。“小”本指面积、体积、容量、数量、强度、力量等不及一般或不及所比较的对象，与“大”相对，作为部首，“小”通常位于汉字的上面，写作“小”，例如“尖”、“尘”；写作“灬”，例如“光”、“当”。小部的字多与微小等意义有关。“尘”是会意字，从土从小，指体积微小的尘土。此外，当说到“数量小”时，有时就用与“小”字形似的“少”字来表示，例如“少量”。

Ancient form 𠂔

小 is an ideograph. The ancient script of 小 represents three grains of sand, indicating its meaning—*small*. As a radical, 小 often appears on the top of compounds, such as in 尖 (jiān; *small sharp point*), 尘 (chén; *dust*), and 少 (shǎo; *small amount*). 小 is sometimes written as 灬, such as in the character 光 (guāng; *tiny rays*).



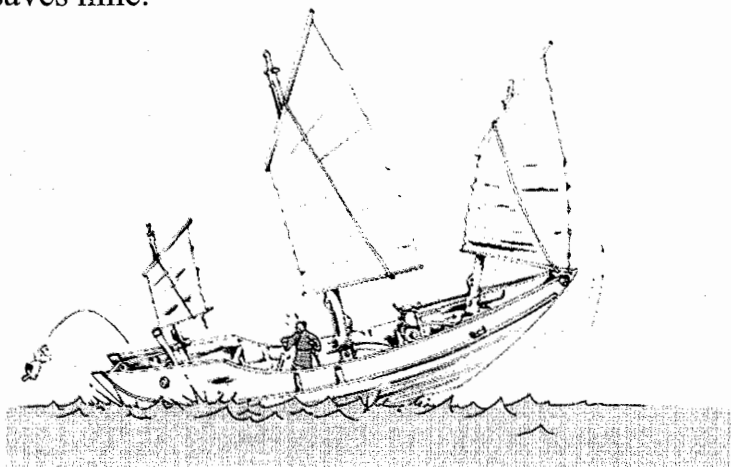


故事 Story

 68. 小隙沉舟 (Xiǎo xì chén zhōu)
 小 small 隙 crack 沉 sink 舟 ship


Once upon a time, a merchant purchased a beautiful ship from a shipbuilder. After several years of use, a member of the crew found a tiny crack in the ship's fore, just above the water level. He reported this problem to the merchant. The merchant knew that if he took the ship in for repairs it would take at least one month. He could not wait that long because he had urgent cargo that needed to be delivered. He told himself a small crack is not that critical; repairs could wait until after this shipment was delivered. The next day, the ship embarked as scheduled. The weather was favorable on the first day of travel, and the ship sailed smoothly. However, the next day the weather changed for the worst, and the ship was battered by a ferocious typhoon. The pounding waves tore at the small crack, which became larger and larger, until water started pouring into the cabin. The ship began to sink and the crew had to abandon ship. Because he did not fix his problem immediately the merchant lost both his cargo and the ship.

This parable cautions us that small problems should be dealt with right away in order to avoid greater losses. It is similar to the English idiom "A stitch in time saves nine."



69. 欠 (qiàn) 部 Breath



古字形

“欠”是象形字，古文字像人张口呼吸的形状。“欠”的本义指张口呵气，打呵欠。人的呼吸有吸进空气和呼出空气两种情况，“欠”属于后者。因为“欠”只呼出而不吸进空气，所以引申为亏欠。作为部首，“欠”通常位于汉字的右侧。欠部的字多与口的动作有关系，例如“歌”、“欢”，都是从“欠”得义。又如，“吹”是会意字，由“口”和“欠”组成，合拢嘴唇用力出气就叫做“吹”。

Ancient form

欠 is a pictograph. 欠's ancient form depicts a person with a large mouth (to indicate exhaling). 欠 means *exhale*, but not *inhale*. Because exhaling is an act of expelling and expending, it therefore has the extended meaning—to owe. As a radical, 欠 often appears on the right of a compound. Characters with the 欠 radical have meanings related to vocalizing or breathing. Some examples are: 歌 (gē; to sing a song or a song), 欢 (huān; to cheer or hail), and 吹 (chuī; to blow).





故事 Story

69. 欢欣鼓舞 (huān xīn gǔ wǔ)

欢欣 (Huān xīn) happy and joyful 鼓舞 (gǔ wǔ) up-beat



Below is a fairy-tale about the Yellow River.

One fall it rained everywhere every day. Small rivers flooded and poured into the Yellow River, which in turn flooded her banks and covered nearby lands and villages. Eventually, nothing could be seen except the vast and invincible Yellow River. The Yellow River was joyful and buoyant as she flowed her way to the Northern sea. She thought herself very powerful, and all other rivers naught but her tributaries. Finally, the Yellow River merged into the Northern Sea. When she saw the boundless water of the sea, she was greatly humbled and embarrassed by her arrogant thoughts. Now she realized that a truly joyful and buoyant life was achieved not by thinking that others were inferior to you, but rather by always seeking to learn from others.



70. 子(zǐ)部 Baby boy



古字形 𠂔

“子”是象形字，古文字像婴儿在襁褓中之形。“子”的本义指婴儿，因为婴儿是小辈，所以“子”引申为幼小、小的等意义。婴儿是血缘的传递者，因此，“子”又有了种子、卵子等意义。作为部首，“子”通常位于汉字的左侧或右侧，例如“孙”、“仔”；有时位于汉字的下面，例如“孕”。子部的字多与孩子或生育等意义有关系。例如“字”，由“宀”和“子”组成，本义为在屋内生孩子，孩子承继血脉，正如文字传承文明和文化一样，所以“字”又用来指记录语言的符号。

Ancient form 𠂔

子 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 子 looks like a baby in swaddling clothes. The original meaning of 子 is *infant*. Because an infant is the epitome of young, therefore, 子 also means young or the younger generation. Because infants are human offspring, 子 also has meanings related to seeds and eggs. As a radical, 子 may appear in the left, right side and bottom. Characters with the 子 radical have meanings associated with procreation, pregnancy, children, and heritage. For example, 孙 (sūn) means *grandson*, 仔 (zǎi) means *son or young animal*, and 孕 (yùn) means *to be pregnant*. The character 字 (zì; character or Chinese script) consists of 宀 and 子. The original meaning of this character is *to give a birth to baby inside a house*. Giving birth ensures the succession of a family line, just as Chinese characters ensure the

transmission of Chinese history and culture to future generations. Therefore 字 means Chinese character.



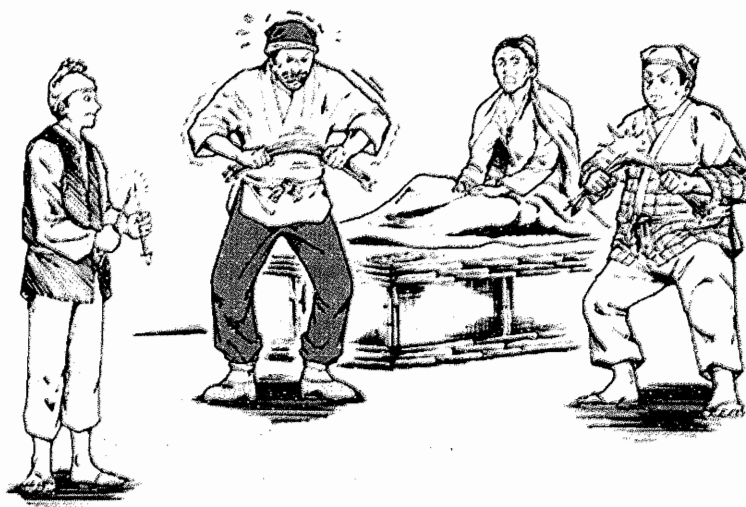
故事 Story

70. 折箭教子 (Zhé jiàn jiào zǐ) 折 break off 箭 arrow 教 teach 子 children



折箭教子 is an ancient fable.

Once upon a time, there was an old man who was very ill and could not do any farm-work in the field. He had three sons, but they quarreled constantly and could not get things done together. The old man knew that he was going to die very soon, so he called his three sons to his bedside. He gave each son an arrow and asked them to break the arrow in half. Needless to say, each broke their arrow easily. Then the old man gave them a bundle of arrows, and asked them to break the bunch. The three sons each took a turn to try and snap the bundle, but none of them succeeded. With that the old man closed his eyes and died. The three sons wondered why their father's final task had been to snap arrows. The third son, who was very smart, realized that his father wanted them stop quarrelling and unite as one strong whole so that through cooperation they could get more done.



第九课 隹、耳、白、骨、立、见、厶、毛、卜、齿

71. 隹(zhuī)部 Short-tailed bird



古字形



“隹”是象形字，古文字像鸟之形，为短尾鸟的总称。“隹”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“隹”通常位于汉字的右侧，有时位于汉字的上面或下面，例如“集”、“雀”。隹部的字多与鸟类或禽类有关。“雏”本是指刚出的的小鸡，引申指其他幼小的禽类和鸟类。后来，“雏”字所指的范围进一步扩大，泛指幼小的动物或初涉社会的人，例如“雏虎”、“雏儿”之“雏”。但凡鸟类、禽类，多喜欢成群结队的生活，这一现象从“集”字中就可以得到印证。“集”字本义是群鸟栖息于树木之上，引申有聚合、会合等意义。

Ancient form



隹 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 隹 is a picture of a short-tailed bird. In modern Chinese, 隹 is no longer an independent character. As a radical, it can appear on the left, right, or top of a compound. Characters with the 隹 radical are often associated with birds or poultry. For example, 雀(què) means *sparrow*. 雏(chú) originally meant *young bird*. Now it also

refers to baby animals. Birds usually like to live in groups. The character 集 (jí) describes this phenomenon. 集 consists of two radicals 隹 and 木 indicating a flock of birds resting in a tree. The extended meaning of 集 is *collective, or gathering*.



故事 Story

71. 孔雀东南飞 (Kǒngquè dōng nán fēi) 孔雀 peacock 东 east 南 south 飞 fly



孔雀东南飞 is a well known poem from the Han Dynasty. The poem is a tragedy about a tragic marriage.

The story took place in Anhui Province sometime between the years 196 and 219. Liu Lanzhi, the wife of a county official, was forced to divorce her husband. Out of devotion to her former husband, Lin resolved to never marry again. Her parents wanted her to get remarried however, because a divorced woman staying with her parents was socially unacceptable at that time. With no way to escape a second marriage, Liu committed suicide. When Liu's former husband learned of her death he was overwhelmed by sadness and also committed suicide in their former home. To honor this couple's deep love, a poet wrote this poem, the first two lines of which read: 孔雀东南飞, 五里一徘徊 the peacock is flying towards the southeast, but it looks back every five li.



72. 耳(ěr) 部 Ear



古字形 𦍋

“耳”是象形字，古文字像耳朵的形状。本义是指耳朵，引申指形状与耳朵相似的东西，例如“木耳”，是可以食用的一种真菌，由于其形状与耳朵相似，故有此称。作为部首，“耳”通常位于汉字的左侧；有时位于汉字的下面，例如“聾”。耳部的字多与耳朵或听觉有关。“取”是会意字，从耳从又，“又”表示手，合起来表示以手取耳。古人作战时往往用割下的敌人的左耳来计算俘虏的数量，耳朵割得越多，功劳就越大。“聪”字本义是指听觉灵敏。因为听觉灵敏是明辨是非的重要条件，所以“聪”又引申指聪明。

Ancient form 𦍋

耳 is a pictograph. The ancient script of 耳 looks like an ear. Therefore, the meaning of 耳 is *ear*. It also refers to things that have a shape similar to an ear, such as 木耳 (*mù'ěr*; *an edible shelf fungus*). As a radical, 耳 often appears on the left side of a compound character, as in the character 取 (*qǔ*). 取 is an ideograph consisting of 耳 and 又 (hand). Together, these radicals mean that a hand is fetching an ear. Why? On the ancient battlefield, the victors would cut off the left ear of their enemies who were slain in battle. They did this not only to keep the ears as trophies, but also because warriors were paid by the number of enemies they killed. Ears were used as proof in order to claim rewards. 耳 can also appear at the bottom of a compound, such as in the character 聾 (*lóng*; *deaf*). The original meaning of 聰 (*cōng*) is

keen hearing. Because keen hearing can improve learning, the extended meaning of 聪 is smart.



故事 Story

72. 掩耳盗铃 (Yǎn ěr dào líng) 掩 cover 耳 ear 盗 steal 铃 bell



Once upon a time, a person wandering on the street came across an exquisite door bell hanging on the door of a rich family's house. The bell was very responsive: sounding a beautiful and resonant chime at the slightest touch. He fell in love with the bell right away and decided to steal it. He knew that if he touched the bell it would ring, and then he would be caught. He thought and thought, and finally devised a plan. He decided to cover his ears when stealing the bell. Of course, though he himself did not hear, the bell rang as soon as he touched it, and he was caught by the owner of the bell.

掩耳盗铃 describes a stupid self-deceptive behavior and is similar to the English expression: "The cat shuts its eyes when stealing cream."



73. 白 (bái) 部 White



古字形

“白”是象形字，古文字像日光照射之形。有人认为“白”字的本义是指太阳之明，引申指天亮。在现代汉语中，“白”字的常用义是“白色”，例如“白雪”。从某种意义上讲，白色近似于无色，于是“白”引申指一无所有；不花一点代价的意思。从另一角度看，白色给人的感觉为明亮、干净，由此“白”又引申指清楚、明白意义等意义。作为部首，“白”有时位于汉字的左侧；有时位于汉字的上面，例如“泉”。白部的字多与白色、光亮有关，例如“皑”字指洁白；“皎”字指明亮。

Ancient form

白 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 白 looks like a sun with a shining ray. Some Chinese scholars believe the original meaning of 白 was actually *bright* with an extended meaning of *daytime*. In modern Chinese, 白 means *white*. Because white means the absence of color; therefore, 白 also has the negative extended meaning *to not own a thing or to pay no price*. Conversely, white also suggests cleanliness and brightness. Hence, 白 also means *clear*. As a radical, 白 appears on the left side of compounds, such as in the characters 皑 (ái; *very white*) and 皎 (jiǎo; *bright white*). 白 can also appear on the top of a compound such as in 泉 (quán; *pure spring water*).

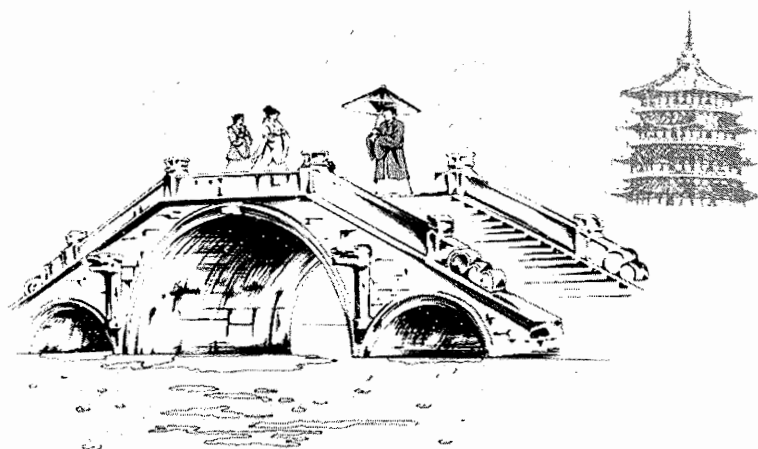


故事 Story

73. 《白蛇传》(Bái shé chuán) 白 white 蛇 snake 传 biography



《白蛇传》*The Story of White Snake* is a legendary Chinese story from the Song Dynasty. The story tells of a white snake spirit that transformed herself into an enchanted lady named Bai Suzhen. Bai came to the human world to give her appreciation and love to a scholar named Xu Xian, who had saved her life in a previous incarnation. Bai finally found her beloved Xu Xian and married him. All was well until one day, the couple visited Jin Shan Temple. The Great Master Fa Hai in the temple could see that the Bai Suzhen was not a human being but a snake, and promptly warned Mr. Xu. Xu did not believe it at first, so Fa Hai gave him a magical wine that Xu could use to test whether Bai was a snake or not. On the Day of the Dragon Boat Festival, Xu took advantage of the holiday to invite Bai to drink the special wine. This wine transformed Bai back into a snake. Xu was so horrified he dropped dead on the spot. In order to save her husband's life, Bai raced up to heaven and stole a magical medicine. Bai forced the magical herb down Xu's throat and he recovered. But the Great Master Fa Hai was intent on separating Xu from Bai because a human coupled with a snake was



an abomination. So he lured Xu to the Jin Shan Temple and put him under house arrest. When Bai came to the Temple looking for her husband Fa Hai attacked her with his magic power. The two fought hard. To win the fight, Bai disobeyed the law of heaven and used a magic to flood the Jin Shan Temple. After giving birth to a son, she was buried under the Leifeng Pagoda in Hangzhou.

74. 骨(gǔ)部



古字形



“骨”是象形字，古文字上半部分像骨架形，下半部分则表示骨所连带的肉。“骨”的本义即是指骨头；骨头支撑整个身体，正如在事物中起基本作用或主要作用的成分，所以“骨”引申指事物主要部分等意义，“骨干”指的就是在企业或业务上起主要作用的人或事物；由此再引申，“骨”还可表示人的品格以及文学或书法作品的风格，例如“骨气”是说高傲自尊、刚强不屈的人格；“风骨”则是指诗文雄健有力的风格。作为部首，“骨”通常位于汉字的左侧。骨部的字多与骨头和人体有关。“骼”是形声字，从骨各声，本指禽类或兽类之骨，引申指人或动物的骨骼。“骸”字也是形声字，从骨亥声，本指胫骨或小腿骨，后来，所指的范围扩大，由指人体的部分骨骼，转而表示人或动物的整个躯体。

Ancient form

骨 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 骨 depicts the bone structure of human body. The skeleton is the foundation of the body. Therefore, the extended meaning of 骨 is *to play an integral role*. The word 骨干 (gǔgàn) means *backbone* or *mainstay*. Another meaning of 骨 is *style or personality*, such as in the words 骨气 (gǔqì; *moral integrity*) and 风骨 (fēnggǔ; *vigor of style in writing or painting*). As a radical, 骨 often appears on the left side of a compound. Characters with 骨 often have meanings related to human or animal bodies, such as in 骼 (gé; *bone structure*) and 骸 (hái; *remains*).



故事 Story

74. 《三打白骨精》(Sān dǎ bái gǔ jīng)
 三 three 打 fight 白 white 骨 bone 精 spirit



《三打白骨精》is a story from the famous Chinese novel *Journey to the West*, written in the Ming Dynasty. *Journey to the West* tells us a story about four monks who went to the Western Heaven (the ancient Chinese Buddhists' name for India) to acquire Buddhist scriptures. On their way they encountered many hardships. The four monks who on the pilgrimage were Triptika, who was a master monk, Piggy Zhu, Sandy Sha, and Sun Wukong—the Monkey king. Sun Wukong is the main character of the novel. He had fiery eyes and diamond pupils, which enabled him to discern disguised demons and see through all kinds of tricks. In the story of 《三打白骨精》, 白骨精—the White Bone Demon, wants to capture Triptika and eat his flesh because this could make 白骨精 immortal. The White Bone Demon attempted to trap Triptika by first disguising itself as a beautiful girl, later as an old lady, and finally as an old man. Unsuspecting Triptika almost falls into each of the snares set by 白骨精. Fortunately, Monkey Sun is able to see through these



snare and comes to protect Triptika and fight with 白骨精. In the end, 白骨精 is defeated, and the four continue on their journey.



75. 立 (lì) 部 To stand



古字形



“立”是会意字，古文字像一人立于地上之形，上面的“大”表示人，下面的“一”表示人所立之处。“立”的本义指人笔直地站立。此外，“立”还可用作副词，表示时间短暂，例如“立即”、“立刻”。作为部首，“立”有时位于汉字的左侧，有时位于汉字的右侧或下面，例如“位”、“竖”。立部的字多与站立或位置等意义有关。“站”字的本义是指直立，例如“站立”；直立之后，两腿是并拢，因此无法行动，所以又引申指停止，例如“车站”之“站”。“端”字本是指站得直；身体直立就不会歪斜，所以又引申指端正，例如“端坐”。

Ancient form 𠂔

立 is an ideograph. In the ancient script 立 looks like a person standing on the ground. The original meaning of 立 is *to stand up straight*. As an adverb, 立 also means *a very short time*. For example, 立即 (lìjí) means *right away*. As a radical, 立 is often associated with *standing* or *position*. It usually appears on the left side of compounds, such as in 站 (zhàn; *station*). Sometimes it appears on the right or at the bottom of a compound, such as in 位 (wèi; *location*), and 竖 (shù; *upright*). The character 端 (duān) means *standing upright*. Its extended meaning is *level* or *to hold something level*.



故事 Story

75. 程门立雪 (Chéng mén lì xuě) 程 Chen 门 door 立 stand 雪 snow



During the Northern Song Dynasty, there lived a man named Yang Shi. Although Yang passed the highest civil service examination, he was very modest and always willing to learn new things from other scholars and also his mentor, the famous scholar Cheng Yi. One day Yang and his friend went to Cheng's home seeking advice. At the door, they were told that Cheng was taking a nap. Yang decided not to disturb his mentor. So he and his friend waited outside the door. Very soon it began to snow. The snow became heavier and heavier. When Cheng finally got up from his nap, he discovered two snowmen standing outside of his house. Cheng was very



touched. He was honored Yang and his friend valued his opinion so highly, and he admired Yang and his friend's persistence and sincerity in the pursuit of knowledge.

Later, people use 程门立雪 to praise those who show great respect for their mentors and determinedly seek knowledge.

76. 见[見](jiàn) 部 To see



古字形 

“见”是会意字，古文字上面是“目”，下面是“人”，在人的头上加只眼睛，是为了突出人的视觉器官。“见”的本义是看见、看到。作为部首，“见”通常位于汉字的右侧；有时位于汉字的下面。见部的字多与观看或观看的方式等意义有关，例如“观”是仔细地看，“览”是粗略地看。

Ancient form  

见 is an ideograph. The ancient character consists of a giant eye at top a person's body. 见 means *to see*. As a radical, it often appears on the right side or at the bottom of a compound. Characters with the 见 radical have meanings associated with vision, viewing, or observation. For example, 观 (guān) means *to view carefully*, and 览 (lǎn) means *to view cursorily*.





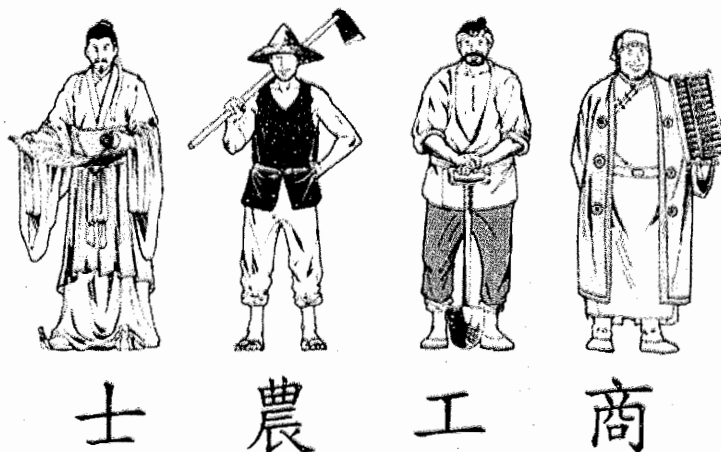
故事 Story

76. 见异思迁 (Jiàn yì sī qiān) 见 see 异 difference 思 think 迁 change



During the Warring States Period, the King of the Qi State asked his Prime Minister Guan Zhong, "How can we make people live and work in peace and contentment?" Guan answered, "First, we should classify people into four categories according to their occupations: scholars, farmers, workers, and merchants. Second, we should have people with same occupation live together, so that they can learn from each other and love their work. They will not often be exposed to new things and so they will not change their jobs too frequently. In this way, everyone can enjoy a good and prosperous life."

见异思迁 means a person's desire to change his or her work the moment he or she see something different. Now it is also used to describe people who are inconstant and always seek out change when they see something that seems better. This phrase refers to people who lack singlehearted devotion to their professions.



士 農 工 商

77. 亼 (sī) 部 Privacy



古字形 亼

“亼”是象形字，古字形象一颗心。“亼”是个人的、自己的事情。“亼”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“亼”通常位于汉字的上面或下面。值得注意的是，许多字典或词典里所收的亼部字，已经很少有保留与“亼”的本义有关的汉字了。日常生活中我们常用的“私”字，许多字典将其归入禾部，而将“公”字归到八部。但这两个字，都与“亼”的本义有着密切的关系。“公”与“私”的意义相反，本是指正直无私、大公无私，引申指公开等意义。所以“私”就有了不公开、秘密而又不合法等意义。

Ancient form 亼

亼 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 亼 looks like a person's heart. This suggests its meaning—private or personal. In modern Chinese, 亼 is no longer an independent character. It is used only as a radical in compounds. In any modern Chinese dictionary, we see only a few characters listed under the radical 亼. Many characters that contain 亼 are listed under other radicals. 私 (sī: *privacy or selfish*) is listed under the 禾 radical; 公 (gōng; *public or selfless*) is listed under the 八 radical. Though listed under other radicals it is clear just by looking at their meanings that these characters are all meaningfully associated with 亼.



故事 Story

77. 公而忘私 (Gōng ér wàng sī) 公 public 而 as to 忘 forget 私 selfish



During the Warring States Period, there was a government official named Qi Huangyang. Once, the Emperor of the Jin State asked Qi to nominate a capable person to be the county magistrate. Unexpectedly, Qi nominated a person who had offended him before. Later, the Emperor asked him to nominate another person be the commander-in-chief. Qi nominated his own son regardless of other people's disapproval. Qi always recommended people whom Qi considered would best serve the country rather than those who would advance his own interests. Confucius praised Qi as a 公而忘私 person. 公而忘私 means to put the interests of the public before personal advancement.



78. 毛 (máo) 部 Hair



古字形 𦘒

“毛”是象形字，古文字像毛之形状。“毛”的本义指禽兽之类的毛，例如“兽毛”、“羽毛”。引申指形状似毛发的谷物或草木以及人的须发。尽管“毛”字有诸多引申意义，但其基本意义，仍是表示禽兽之毛。作为部首，“毛”有时位于汉字左侧或右侧，偶尔位于汉字的下面。毛部的字多与皮毛等意义有关，例如“毯”是指厚实有毛绒的成片织品；“毫”是指细长而尖的毛。

Ancient form 𦘒

毛 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 毛 depicts a tiny piece of down. The original meaning of 毛 means *animal fur or birds' feathers*. Later, 毛 also came to mean *human body hair and wispy hair-like grasses or plants*. As a radical, it appears on the left, right, or bottom of compounds. Characters with 毛 radical have meanings associated with any kind of hair. For example, 毯 (tǎn) means *blanket* and 毫 (háo) means *long, fine hair*.



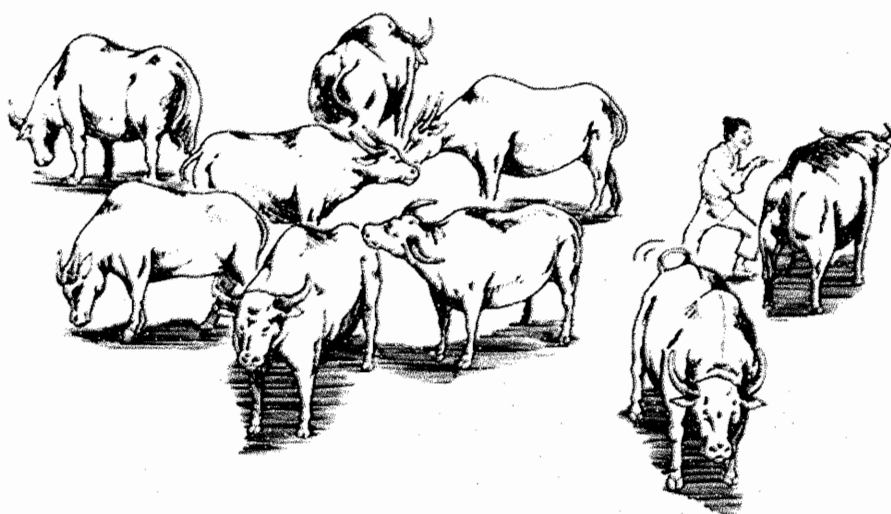


故事 Story

78. 九牛一毛 (Jiǔ niú yī máo) 九 nine 牛 ox — one 毛 hair



In the Han Dynasty, the great scholar and historian Sima Qian was persecuted by the government. Sima Qian offended the government by supporting General Li Ling who, when faced with an utterly hopeless situation on the battlefield, had surrendered to the Huns. To punish Sima Qian, the government had him castrated. Initially, Sima Qian was extremely humiliated and wanted to commit suicide. But later became convinced that his humiliation and death were of little importance. His death would be like pulling a single hair from nine oxen 九牛亡一毛. He realized his death would not help to change the emperor's mind and people's prejudice. So he decided to live and endure the humiliation in order to continue his important mission: to finish his great book, *Records of the Historian* (《史记》). Later, people derived 九牛一毛 from Sima Qian's poetic turn of phrase to describe a very small minority.



79. 卜[卜](bǔ) 部
Divination



古字形 𠂇

“卜”是象形字,古文字像龟甲被烧灼后出现的裂纹形状。古人将甲骨进行处理后,放在火上灼烧,根据其裂纹形状判断凶吉。占卜完毕后,占卜之人还会将占卜所问之事、占卜日期、占卜结果等内容以及占卜人姓名刻在龟骨上,这类的记录内容就是我们通常所说的“卜辞”。“卜辞”因为是刻写在龟甲兽骨上的,所以这些文字被称为“甲骨文”。“甲骨文”是我们今天所看到的最早的记录中国古代历史的出土文献。卜部的字多与占卜吉凶等意义有关。“卦”是古代占卜用的,象征自然现象和人事变化的一套符号。“八卦”就是《周易》中的八种基本图形,象征天、地、雷、风、水、火、山、泽八种自然现象,这些图相互拼合得六十四卦,用来象征各种事物。

Ancient form 𠂇

卜 is a pictograph. The ancient script of it depicts the cracks in an oracle bone. Ancient Chinese people used turtle shells for divination. They heated the turtle shell over a fire until it cracked, then they interpreted their fortunes according to the cracks. When the divination was complete, the bone-reader carved three things into the shell or bone: the names of those who had requested the divination, the content of the divination, and the time of the divination. These records are referred to as *oracle bone inscriptions*—and they are the earliest extant pieces of Chinese script, and are believed to

be characters' origin. Characters that contain the radical 卜 often relate to fortune-telling. The character 卦 (guà) stands for a set of symbols representing changes within nature and human society. These symbols were a tool in soothsaying. 八卦 is from the *Book of Changes* (commonly known as the *I Ching* or *Yi Jing*). It consists of eight types of hexagrams which stand for the eight kinds of natural phenomena: heaven, earth, thunder, wind, water, fire, mountain, and marsh. These natural forces can combine in 64 different ways to create all things and events in the world. Each of these 64 combinations is represented in the 八卦.



故事 Story

79. 中国古代占卜术 (Zhōngguó gǔdài zhānbǔshù) 中国 Chinese 古代 ancient 占卜术 divination



占卜 divination (specifically: to divine by means of the Eight Diagrams as described in the *Book of Changes*) in Chinese history is a method of fortune-telling. Divination played an important role in people's lives during the pre-science era. While based in superstition, it gave rise to many of the rational mainstays of Chinese society, such as the early Chinese writing system, philosophies, mathematics, astronomy, geology, and archeology.



80. 齿[齒](chǐ) 部 Tooth



古字形

“齿”在甲骨文中是象形字，像口中有齿形，后添加“止”字为声符，成为形声字。“齿”本是指人口中的上下两排牙齿。作为部首，“齿”通常位于汉字的左侧。齿部的字多与牙齿或年龄等意义有关。“龈”指围绕牙颈及覆盖上下颌牙槽的组织，泛指牙槽及其四周的软组织；“龄”字中之所以有“齿”，是因为从牙齿可以看出一个人年龄的长幼。

Ancient Form

齿 is a pictograph. The ancient script of 齿 looks like two teeth in a mouth. Later, 止 was added to the top of the pictograph to indicate the pronunciation. This created the modern character 齿. As a radical, 齿 often appears on the left side of a compound. Characters with 齿 often have meanings associated with teeth. For example, 龈 (yín) means *gum*. The 齿 radical also signifies age or aging. 龄 (líng) means *age*, because we can tell a person's age based on the condition of their teeth.





故事 Story

80. 唇亡齿寒 (Chún wáng chǐ hán) 唇 lips 亡 gone 齿 teeth 寒 cold



During the Warring States Period, the King of the Jin State wanted to expand his territory. He decided to invade the Guo State. In order to reach the Guo State, Jin's army had to go through the Yu State. So the King of Jin sent his ambassador to Yu to get the King's permission to march an army through his lands. The ambassador presented two gifts—a priceless jade and a precious horse to the King of Yu. Yu was very pleased with these gifts and wanted to let the Jin army through. However, a senior official advised the King of Yu that it was not a good idea to allow the Jin army go through Yu's territory to attack Guo. He reminded the King that Guo and Yu had always had good relations, and had become interdependent. If the Guo State was conquered by Jin, then the state of Yu would be sandwiched between the Jin's two territories and the Jin would inevitably attack Yu. He likened the relationship of Guo and Yu to teeth and lips: When the lips were gone the teeth would be exposed to the cold. The King of Yu, however, did not take this good advice. He let the Jin army go through his state to attack the State of Guo. After the Jin conquered Guo, they turned around and conquered Yu.

唇亡齿寒 describes an interdependent relationship between two things. It is a reminder that when your ally falls, you are in danger.



第十课 方、黑、爰、儿、彡、气、勺、爪、瓦、走

81. 方 (fāng) 部 Square



古字形 𠄎

“方”是象形字，古文字像两只船并立之形，本义是指并行的两只船。在现代汉语中“方”的本义已不再使用，而以其引申义通行。“方”用作名词，表示方形的东西，引申指空间位置或方位。作为部首，“方”位于汉字的左侧。由于现代的字典或词典把表示旗帜的意义部归入“方”部，所以方部还与旗帜等意义有关。中国清代满族实行军政合一的“八旗制度”，所以“旗”又特指满族，例如“旗人”即满族人。“旗袍”是一种富有中国民族风情特色的女性服装，由满族妇女的长袍演变而来。由于满族称为“旗人”，故将其称之为“旗袍”。“旅”是军队的编制单位，“方”在“旅”字中是表示旗帜，因为每个军队都有军旗。又因为军队经常行军打仗，所以“旅”的引申义是旅行。

Ancient form



方 is an ideograph. The ancient form of 方 looks like two parallel boats. This meaning is no longer in use in modern Chinese, however. 方 now

means *square*. Its extended meaning is *physical space* or *position*. In modern Chinese, the radical 方 also has the meaning of *flag* or *banner*. Therefore, characters that contain 方 are usually related to *either space* or *flags*. 旗 (qí) means flag. In the Qing Dynasty, the Manchu Nationality adopted a military administrative system called 八旗 (bāqí; *Eight Banners*). Thus, another name for the Manchu Nationality was 旗人 (qírén; *flag people*). The 旗袍 (qípáo; *cheongsam*) is a dress that developed from the gown worn by Manchu women. 旅 (lǚ; *brigade*) is a military unit. Because each military unit has its own banner, so 方 is the radical for 旅. Because the army often travels to fight with enemies; thus, 旅 also means *to travel*.



故事 Story

81. 右手画圆, 左手画方

(Yòushǒu huà yuán, zuǒshǒu huà fāng)

右 right 手 hand 画 draw 圆 circle,

左 left 手 hand 画 draw 方 square



Once upon a time, a person thought that he was very smart. He bragged that he could simultaneously draw a circle with his right hand and a square with his left. But when he tried he produced a deformed circle and a rounded square.

This story says that ordinary people can't do too many things at once



without sacrificing quality. Those who can are geniuses. Therefore, 右手画圆, 左手画方 is now used to describe one who tries to focus on too many things at once and consequently produces poor results. But it can also be used to describe a person who possesses extraordinary abilities and can successfully handle many tasks simultaneously.

82. 黑 (hēi) 部 Black



古字形

“黑”是会意字,古文字上面像窗子的形状,下面像燃烧的火形,合起来表示烟火熏黑之意。“黑”的本义为黑色,引申为暗、光线不足等意义。暗处不易被看到,所以“黑”有秘密的、不公开的或非法的意思。作为部首,“黑”通常位于汉字的左侧;有时位于汉字的上面或下面。黑部的字多与黑色等意义有关。“墨”字本指书画所用的黑色颜料。“黛”是指青黑色。

Ancient form

黑 is an ideograph. The bottom part of the ancient character looks like a wood-burning fire. The top part looks like a window with some black spots due to heavy smoke. Together, they mean *black*. The extended meaning of 黑 is *dark*. Because things are not easily observed under the cover of darkness, thus, 黑 also means *secretive or illegal*. As a radical, 黑 can appear on the left, top, or bottom of a character. Characters with the 黑 radical have meanings related to black color. For example, 墨 (mò) means *ink* for writing calligraphy; 黛 (dài) is a greenish-black color.



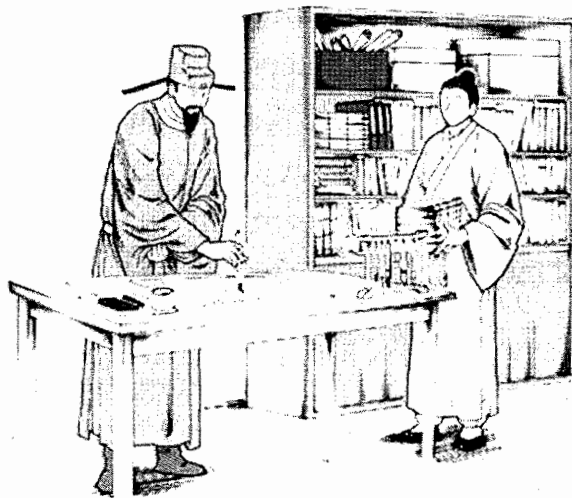
故事 Story

82. 近朱者赤, 近墨者黑 (Jìn zhū zhě chì, jìn mò zhě hēi)
 近 close to 朱 vermilion 者 person 赤 red,
 近 close to 墨 ink 者 person 黑 black



Ouyang Xiu was a great scholar during the Northern Song period. He was renowned as a noble-minded person and a great writer. One day, Ouyang Xiu's friend Fan Zhongyan came to visit him. Fan chatted with Ouyang's subordinate—a man named Lv. During their conversation, Fan told Lv about a Chinese saying—"things that are close to vermilion are reddened and things that are close to ink are blackened." He thought Lv was a such lucky man to be able to work closely with a great scholar like Ouyang Xiu, because Lv would be reddened—his character would be bettered and he would learn a lot from Ouyang Xiu.

近朱者赤, 近墨者黑 is similar to the English saying "He who keeps company with the wolf will learn to howl."



83. 殳(shū)部 Ancient weapon



古字形 

“殳”是象形字，古文字像手持长柄器具之形。“殳”本指一种兵器，引申指以手持器械击打某物。作为部首，“殳”通常位于汉字的右侧。殳部的字大多与以手持械击打等意义有关。“段”表示锤炼，后来写成“锻”。“毁”字的造字理据是以手持械击碎瓦器，由瓦器被损坏产生出本义——毁坏。

Ancient form 

殳 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 殳 looks like a hand holding a weapon with a long shaft. The original meaning of 殳 is shū—a type of ancient weapon. Its extended meaning is *holding an apparatus with which to strike*. As a radical, 殳 often appears on the right side of a compound character. Characters with the 殳 radical often have meanings related to hitting or striking. 段 indicates hammer-harden, later written as 锻(duàn). The original meaning of 毁(huǐ) is *to use apparatus to break pottery into pieces*. Its extended meaning is *to destroy*.



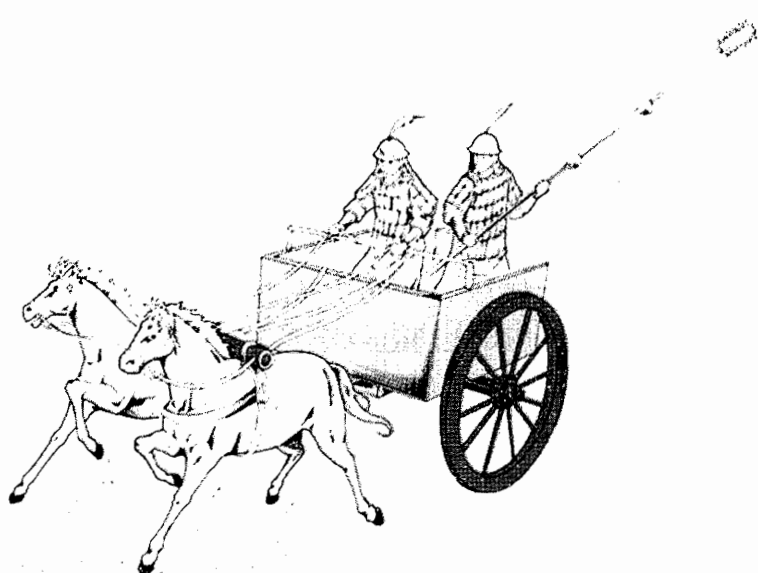


故事 Story

83. 古代的车战兵器——殳 (Gǔdài de chē zhàn bīngqì—shū) 古代的 ancient 车 carriage 战 combat 兵器 weapon——殳 shu



The use of the weapon 殳 in chariot combat started in the Pre-Qin Dynasty period. According to historical records, the 殳 was created in the Shang Dynasty. However, its shape had been lost to history for more than two thousand years. It was not until the 1978 archaeological discovery in Sui County that the 殳 was revealed to the modern world. The shaft of a 殳 was about three-meters tall, made out of bamboo or wood. A bronze or iron pointed head was mounted at the top of the shaft. The 殳 was a very popular and effective weapon during the Warring States Period. That period saw near constant warfare as seven states contended for supremacy. After the Han Dynasty, chariot combat gradually lost its popularity. As such, use of the 殳 was also diminished.



84. 儿 (ér; rén) 部

Child



古字形 𠂔

“儿”是象形字，古文字像一个张口的小儿的形状，本义是指男性幼儿。作为部首，儿读作 rén。现代汉语中的“儿”读作 ér 是“兒”的简化字。中国古代，“儿”专指男孩儿，例如“儿子”。作为部首，“儿”多位于汉字的下面，例如“兄”、“允”。儿部的字多与男性等意义有关系。“兄”从传世文献的用法来看，是指亲戚中同辈男性中年龄大的。后来，旁系亲属中同辈而长于自己的男性也可称为“兄”，如“堂兄”、“表兄”。

Ancient form 𠂔

儿 is a pictograph. In the ancient script, 儿 looks like a swaddled baby boy. The original meaning of 儿 is *baby boy*. Its extended meaning is *male*. As a radical, it is pronounced as “rén.” In modern Chinese, however, 儿 is pronounced as “ér” which is the simplified form of the character 兒 (child; children). As a radical, 儿 usually appears at the bottom of compounds, such as in 兄 (xiōng) and 允 (yǔn). 兄 refers to elder males, especially elder brothers. 允 means *to trust (your elders)*. Its extended meaning is *to allow or to permit*.





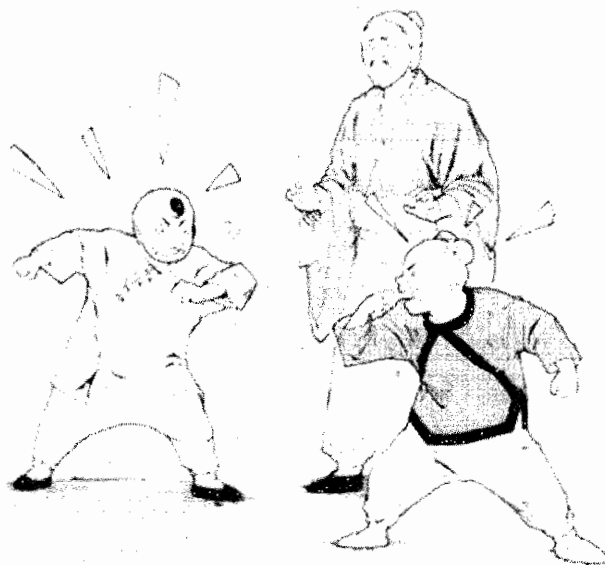
故事 Story

84. 难兄难弟 (Nán/Nàn xiōng nán/nàn dì)
 难 difficult to be 兄 elder brother
 难 difficult to be 弟 younger brother



This story took place during the Han Dynasty. A County Magistrate had two gifted sons—Chen Ji and Chen Chen. They both got married and had a child. One day, the two children began arguing over who's father was a better one. Unable to resolve the issue, they went to see their grandfather, the County Magistrate, and asked him to give a judgment. The grandfather smiled and said, "Chen Ji is the best oldest son and Chen Chen is the best youngest son. I cannot tell who is a better one. They both were equal good."

We use this idiom to describe two of a kind who are equal worth. However, this idiom is seldom used in the modern Chinese. According to the *Modern Chinese Dictionary* (Commercial Press 2005), most of time this idiom is used to describe two of a kind who are equal bad. In this case 难兄难弟 is pronounced as (nàn xiōng nàn dì) to indicate two of a kind who are in equal bad situation.



85. 彡 (shān) 部 Embellish



古字形 彡

“彡”是象形字，古文字像图画文饰之形。“彡”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“彡”通常位于汉字的左侧或右侧，如“须”、“彩”；有时位于汉字的下侧，例如“彦”。彡部的字多与色彩或修饰等意义有关系。“彩”是形声字，从彡采声，本是指文章富有文采，引申指彩色，“五彩缤纷”是指色彩丰富多样，非常美丽。“须”字是会意字，从页(头)从彡，表示被修饰后的胡须。在中国古代，男子以须眉浓秀、整齐为美。

Ancient form 彡

彡 is a pictograph. The ancient script depicts decorative patterns. In modern Chinese, 彡 is no longer used as an independent character. As a radical, it often appears on the left or right side of a compound such as in 须 and 彩. Sometimes, 彡 appears at the bottom of a compound character, such as in 彦 (*yàn; a man of virtue and ability*). Characters with the 彡 radical have meanings related to color or embellishment. 彩 (*cǎi; colorful*) is phonetic-semantic compound. 采 represents the pronunciation (*cǎi*) and 彡 hints at the meaning—*colorful (embellishment)*. 须 (*xū; moustache*) is an ideograph consisting of two radicals. 页 means head and 彡 means embellished. The moustache can be considered an addition to, or decoration on, the face. In ancient times, government officials were very particular about keeping their moustaches neat.





故事 Story

85. 巾帼不让须眉 (Jīnguó bú ràng xūméi)
 巾帼 ancient woman's head dress (women)
 不 not 让 yield to 须眉 moustache (men)



Toward the end of the Northern Wei Dynasty, barbarians neighboring the Han Nation became stronger. They often invaded the Central Plains of the Han nation. The court had to conscript an army.

A young woman named Hua Mulan had liked horseback riding and archery since she was a child. One day Mulan's aged and weak father was drafted into the defense militia. Worried her father couldn't handle military service, Mulan came up with a plan. She disguised herself as a young man and went to war in her father's place. She remained in the army for twelve years and won many military honors. Her fellow soldiers never knew that she was a woman. They greatly respected Mulan's courage. After the war, the emperor summoned all the officers and soldiers who made great contributions in defeating the invaders and granted each of them a promotion. But Mulan told the emperor that she did not want to be promoted. All she wanted was a good horse to carry her home immediately. The emperor granted her request. When she reached her home, she took off her armor and put on her lady's dress. The fellow soldiers who had accompanied her home were shocked. They praised Mulan, saying “巾帼不让须眉—Women could do men's work just as well as men.”



86. 气(qì)部 Air; Gas



古字形 𠂇

“气”是象形字，古文字像云气蒸腾上升的样子，本义为云气。后来则用以指没有一定的形状或体积，能自由流动的物体。在中国古代的医学中，人们把能使人体器官发挥机能的动力称为“气”，例如“气功”之“气”。“气功”是中国特有的一种健身术，通过调心(控心理活动)、调息(调控呼吸运动)、调身(调控身体的姿势和动作)等步骤，达到防病治病、健身延年、开发潜能的目的。作为部首，“气”通常位于汉字的上右侧，例如“氛”。气部的字多与云气或气体之义有关，大多为表示自然界中空气组成成分的后起字，例如“氢”、“氧”等。

Ancient Form 𠂇

气 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 气 looks like *rising air*. 气 originally referred to *clouds*. Later, it became used to refer to any kind of air or gas. According to traditional Chinese medicine, there is a kind of air inside the body whose movement keeps one alive and maintains the body's vitality. The Chinese developed a set of exercises that help maintain the healthy flow of this air. These exercises are known as 气功 (qìgōng). The practice of 气功 involves three things: regulating thoughts and emotions, modulating the breathing, and coordinating breathing with physical movement. Characters with the 气 radical often have meanings related to air, gas, or atmosphere—such as 氛 (fēn; *atmosphere*), 氧 (yǎng; *oxygen*), and 氢 (qīng; *hydrogen*).



故事 Story

86. 紫气东来 (Zǐ qì dōng lái) 紫 purple 气 air 东 east 来 come



During the Eastern Zhou Dynasty, a man named Yin Xi worked as the Head of the Hangu Pass. One morning, as he left home, he saw the rosy rays of the rising sun in the east. As he admired the dawn, he noticed a huge purple cloud drifting towards the west. As the purple cloud drifted it became thicker and thicker. It made the mountain in the distance especially magnificent. He suddenly realized the cloud was a good omen—that there would be a wise man coming to the Hangu Pass. Sure enough, shortly after he saw this omen, the great scholar—Laozi arrived. Yin Xi invited Laozi to stay in the Hangu Pass. Laozi agreed. During his stay, Laozi wrote his great work—The Taodejing (*The Classic of Virtue*), a splendid piece of literature whose influence on Chinese philosophy and culture is immeasurable and continues to this day.



87. 勹 (bāo) 部
Wrap up; packet



古字形 𠂇

“勹”是象形字，古文字像人身体弯曲之形，本义为包裹。“勹”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“勹”通常位于汉字的上右侧，例如“包”、“勾”。勹部的字多与包裹、弯曲等意义有关。“包”字的本义就是包裹；“包”又引申指容纳在内的意思，例如“包括”、“包含”。

Ancient form 𠂇

勹 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 勹 looks like a person who is in a bending down position to hold something. The original meaning of 勹 is *to wrap up*. In modern Chinese, 勹 is no longer an independent character. It is used only as a radical for compound characters, such as in 包 (bāo; *to wrap up*). The original meaning of 勾 (gōu) is *to crook or bend*. Its extended meaning is *hook* (a bent tool).



故事 Story

87. 包罗万象 (Bāoluó wànxiàng)

包 wrap 罗 include 万 ten thousand 象 phenomenon



Pu Songling was one of the great authors of the Qing Dynasty. He wrote a collection of short stories named *Strange Stories from a Chinese Studio*. It had 12 volumes with 491 stories. Each story features some type of ghosts or spirits. The author used these fantastical figures to explore real social problems. The book has been wildly popular in China since its publication—both for its haunting stories and what it reveals about social life in the Qing dynasty. Because the book created such a large number of rich and distinct characters, people used 包罗万象 to praise its comprehensiveness. 包罗万象 is now used to describe anything of an encyclopedic nature.



88. 爪 (zhǎo) 部 Claw



古字形



“爪”是象形字，古文字像手有所抓挠之形，本义为手指或鸟兽的脚趾。作为部首，“爪”有时位于汉字的上面，写作“𠂇”，俗称“爪子头”，例如“受”、“采”；有时位于汉字的左侧，例如“印”、“爬”。爪部的字多与用手抓取等义有关。“采”字由“爪”和“木”组成，表示用手从树上摘取。引申指细心挑选、选取、搜集的含义，例如“采访”、“采购”。“印”字的左边是“爪”，右边是“卩”（表示印章），以手执“卩”，表示“印”的动作，印章加盖到纸上会留下“印记”，手的印记为“手印”。

Ancient form



爪 is an ideograph. In the ancient script it looks like a claw. Its meanings are *claws* or *fingers*. As a radical, 爪 sometimes appears on the top of a compound, where it is written as 𠂇, such as in the character 采 (cǎi; *to pick (by using fingers)*). Sometimes it appears on the left or right side of a compound character, as in the characters 印 (yìn) and 爬 (pá). Here the left part of 印 is 爪 and the right part is 卩 (*a seal*). Together, they suggest using the fingers to press down a seal, or *to stamp*. 爬 means to *crawl, creep, or climb*.





故事 Story

88. 片鳞半爪 (Piàn lín bàn zhǎo) 片 single 鳞 fish scale 半 half 爪 bird claw



This idiom describes a situation in which one sees only a very small fraction of a whole, like seeing only a single scale of a whole fish or half of a talon on a whole bird.



89. 瓦 (wǎ) 部 Tile



古字形



“瓦”是象形字，古文字像屋瓦相接之形。“瓦”是烧制而成的土器的总称。作为部首，“瓦”通常位于汉字的右侧，例如“瓶”；有时位于汉字的下面，例如“瓷”。“瓷”是形声字，从瓦次声，现在多用以指瓷器。中国是瓷器的故乡，瓷器的发明是中华民族对世界文明的巨大贡献。被称为“瓷都”的江西景德镇，在元代出产的青花瓷是中国瓷器的代表。



瓦 is a pictograph. The ancient symbol for 瓦 looks like a roof tile. 瓦 refers to all kinds of things made from firing in a kiln. As a radical, 瓦 is often placed on the right or bottom of a compound character, such as in the characters 瓶 (píng; *bottle*) and 瓷 (cí; *porcelain*). China has a long history of producing porcelain. Jingde Zhen, a city located in the Jiangxi Province, began producing a blue and white porcelain as early as the Yuan Dynasty. This porcelain became famous all over the world.



故事 Story

89. 宁为玉碎，不为瓦全 (Nìng wéi yù suì, bù wéi wǎ quán)

宁 would rather 为 to be 玉 jade 碎 broken,
不 not 为 to be 瓦 tile 全 unbroken



In the year 550, Gao Yang, the General of the Eastern Wei in the Northern Dynasties, forced Emperor Xiaojing to resign and made himself the Emperor. The next year, fearful of losing his rule, he killed Xiaojing's three sons. But eliminating these heirs was not enough to allay his fears. He was afraid other member of the former emperor's family would seek revenge. Soon, he slaughtered twenty-five entire families who were related to Xiaojing and shared the same surname. In a total, he killed more than 700 innocent people. When news of these massacres had spread, everyone who shared Xiaojing's surname was scared. Several decided to change their surname. One man however, was very brave. He decided he would not to yield to Gao Yang. He said, "I would rather be a shattered jade than an unbroken piece of tile. I will never change my surname."

Today, 宁为玉碎，不为瓦全 means "It is better to die in glory than live with dishonor." A similar English expression is: Better to die on one's

feet than live on one's knees.



90. 走 (zǒu)
To run; To walk



古字形 𧾷

“走”是会意字，古文字上面为“夭”，像人摆开两臂跑步之形；下面为“止”，突出其为脚的动作。“走”本义是指跑，例如“飞禽走兽”说的就是天上飞翔的鸟和地上奔跑的野兽。后来，本义不再单独使用，“走”字专门用来表示行走之义。作为部首，“走”多位于汉字的左侧。走部的字多与奔跑或行走的动作有关。“赶”是形声字，从走干声，表示追赶、驱赶之义，例如“赶鸭子上架”，人们用来比喻强人所难，迫使他人去做不能做的事；“越”本义为经过、超过。

Ancient form 𠂔

走 is an ideograph. The top part of the ancient form looks like a walking person, while the bottom part is a foot to emphasize the action of walking. The original meaning of 走 is *to run*. In modern Chinese, 走 means only *to walk*. As a radical it often appears on the left side of a compound. Characters with the 走 radical often have meanings related to foot movement, such as 赶 (gǎn; *to catch up with*) and 越 (yuè; *to jump over*).



故事 Story

90. 走马观花 (Zǒu mǎ guān huā) 走 running 马 horse 观 watching 花 flowers



走马观花—seeing flowers while riding on horseback—came from a poem written by a famous Tang poet, Meng Jiao. When Meng Jiao was young, he studied very hard but repeatedly failed the Civil Service Exam, which was the prerequisite to attaining a government post. However, at the age of 46, Meng Jiao finally passed the exam and became a successful candidate for government office. He wrote the two lines: 春风得意马蹄疾, 一日看尽长安花—*Flushed with success, the horse runs fast, seeing all the flowers of Changan city in just one day*. These lines expressed his unbridled elation at his accomplishment.

Now, the expression 走马观花 has come to describe when people gain only a superficial understanding of a situation through only a cursory observation or visit.



第十一课 匚、戶、工、止、寸、夊、矢、斤、舌、身

91. 匚 (fāng) 部 Box; Container



古字形 匚

“匚”是象形字，古文字像受物之器，“匚”本指一种盛放物品的方形器具。“匚”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。匚部的字多和箱子或类似箱子的器物有关，例如“匡”、“匣”等字。“匡”是形声字，从匚王声，本是盛东西的方形竹器，将东西放进竹器里，必然要对储物进行一番整理，使之整齐易放，所以“匡”由此引申出纠正、匡正等意义。“匣”也是形声字，从匚甲声，是一种小型的、盖子可以开合的储物器。

Ancient form 匚

匚 is a pictograph. The ancient symbol for 匚 looks like a rectangular box with one side open. In modern Chinese, 匚 is no longer an independent character but appears only as a radical. Characters containing 匚 have meanings related to boxes or containers, such as 匡 and 匣. 匡 is a phonetic-semantic compound consisting of two radicals: 匚—indicating the meaning *a rectangle bamboo container*, and 王 which suggests the sound—kuāng. When we put things into a container, we would need to arrange them in an

order, thus, the extended meaning of 匡 is *to correct*. 匡 is also a phonetic-semantic compound combining 匚 and 甲. It is pronounced as xiá and it means *small box*.

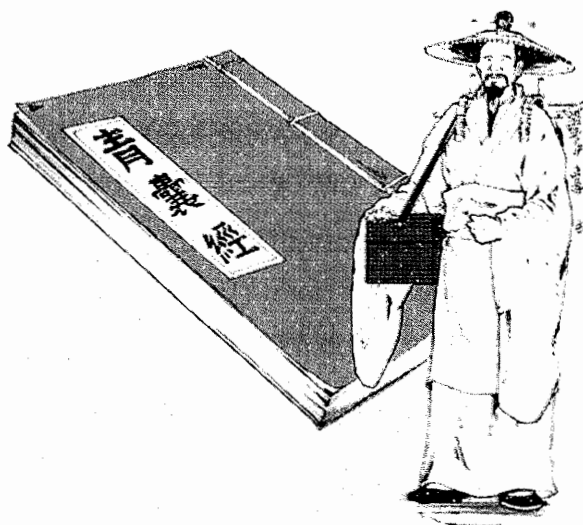


故事 Story

91. 神医华佗 (Shén yī Huà Tuó) 神 magic 医 doctor 华佗 Hua Tuo



In the Eastern Han Dynasty, Hua Tuo was an accomplished doctor. His medical knowledge covered many fields, including contagious diseases, respiratory diseases, gynecology, dermatology, and pediatrics. In addition to herbal medicines, he was also adept at acupuncture. Because he could cure so many diseases many people of the time revered him as a magician. When he learned of Hua Tuo's great reputation, the King of Wei in the Three Kingdoms Period (155–220), Cao Cao forced Hua Tuo to be his personal doctor. Cao Cao suffered from chronic headaches. He hoped that Hua Tuo could help him. One day, at midnight, Cao Cao suffered a serious headache, and so he called for Hua Tuo. Hua Tuo was now familiar with Cao Cao's medical situation. He believed Cao Cao had a brain tumor. He suggested that Cao first drink some herbal soup that would dull the pain, then undergo surgery to get rid of the tumor. Cao Cao flew into a rage. He shouted at Hua Tuo: "How dare you try to kill me!" and had Hua Tuo imprisoned at once. Before long Hua Tuo died in prison. Before his death, he recorded all of his vast medical knowledge in a manuscript, and



presented it to the prison guard. But the guard was terrified that Cao Cao would find out, and so he burned the manuscript. Therefore, Hua Tuo's medical knowledge was lost to future generations.

92. 戶 (hù) 部
Single-leaf door



古字形 𡩂

“户”是象形字，古文字像单扇门形。户的本义是单扇门，后泛指门户、门第。作为部首，“户”通常位于汉字的左上面。户部的字多与门户有关。“房”是指住人的建筑物。“扇”本是大型屏障物，指帝王出巡时用来障日挡风避沙的，就像房子可以用来障日挡风一样，西汉以后才有了用人手摇取凉的工具扇子。

Ancient form 𡩂

户 is a pictograph. In the ancient script it looks like a single-leaf door. This was the original meaning of 户. Its extended meaning is *household* or *family status*. Characters with the 户 radical have meanings related to housing or households. 房 (fáng) means *house*. 扇 (shàn) was a tool used by emperor's family to block the sun and sand when they were on outings. After the Western Han Dynasty, this character came to be used as *fan*. Now it can refer to any type of fan.

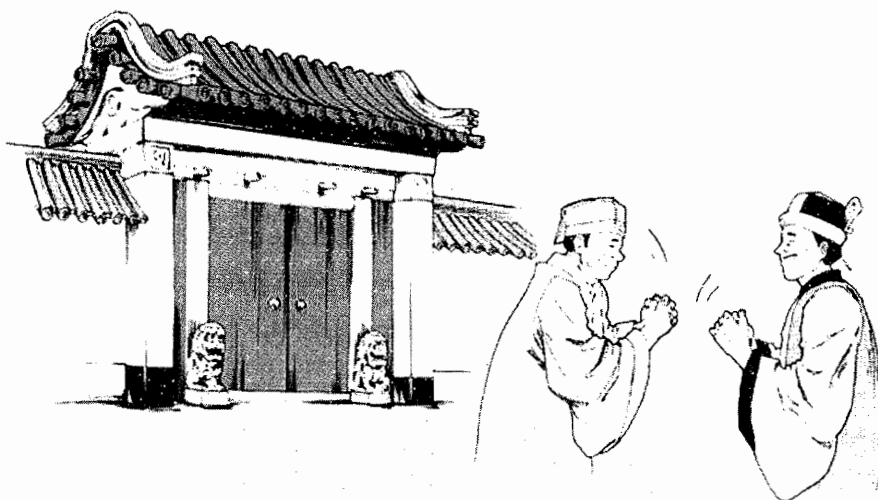


故事 Story

92. 门当户对 (Mén dāng hù duì)
 门当 door sleepers (underneath of the door)
 户对 door pillars (on the top of doorframe)



In traditional Chinese architecture, door sleepers and door pillars were used as decorations for a traditional Chinese two-leaf door. In traditional China, rich families were very particular about the ornamentation on their doors, because they reflected the family's wealth and glory. Different designs and materials signified different economic condition, social status, and occupations. In fact, before betrothing their children, family members would send a servant to observe the quality of the prospective bride or groom's door decorations to determine whether the prospective family was rich or poor. Because of this, 门当户对 later came to be used to refer to an affianced couple who are well-matched in terms of social and economic condition.



93. 工 (gōng) 部 Ruler



古字形 工

“工”是象形字，古文字像曲尺之形。“工”本是指工匠用的曲尺，引申作动词，指擅长、精于等意思。“工”用作形容词，有精巧、精致的意思，例如“工巧”。作为部首，“工”通常位于汉字的左侧，有时位于汉字的下面。“工”部字多与擅长或不擅长做某种事等意义有关。“左”的本义是用(左)手相助(拿尺或制作工艺)，引申义是左边。“巧”是形声字，从工丂声，常用来指某人技艺高明或某物工艺精巧。“差”是指做得不好。

Ancient form 工

工 is a pictograph. The ancient script depicts an ancient three-slatted carpenter's square. Thus, 工 means *an instrument used for measurement*. When 工 is used as a verb, it means *to be good at doing (something)*. As a radical, it can appear on the left, top, or bottom of a compound. Characters with 工 often have meanings related to aptitude and specialization. The original meaning of 左 (zuǒ) is holding (a ruler) in the left hand while (working on a craft). Its extended meaning is *left*. 巧 (qiǎo) means *skillful*. The original meaning of 差 (chà) is *differing from or lacking in quality*.

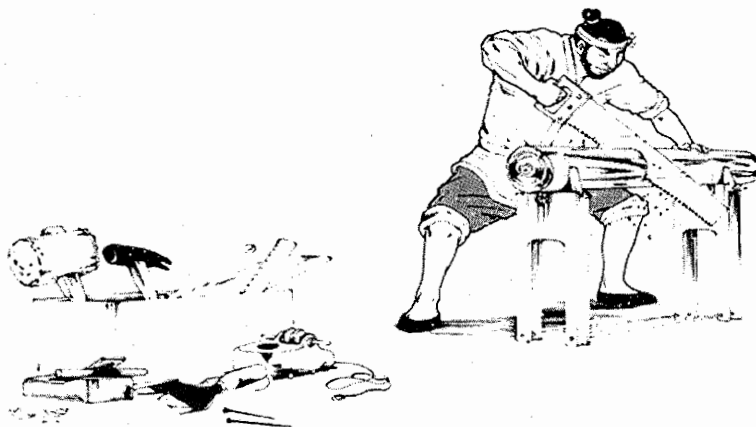


故事 Story

93. 良工巧匠 (Liáng gōng qiǎo jiàng) 良 good 工 worker 巧 skillful 匠 craftsman



Lu Ban, was a carpenter in ancient times. He was regarded as a 良工巧匠—a highly skilled craftsman. When Lu Ban was very young, his family was very poor. He had to leave home and go to Zhongnan Mountain to be the apprentice of a master carpenter. His journey to Zhongnan Mountain was full of hardship, but he was not discouraged. When he finally reached his future master's home the carpenter seemed to have no intention of training him. He set Lu Ban to menial tasks, such as sharpening disused and rusty woodworking tools such as axes and planers. Lu Ban spent seven days and nights making them sharp and shining again. Then the master asked him to cut down a thousand year-old tree and make it into a smooth helm with two-thousand holes. Lu Ban did not complain. He worked steadily for twelve days and nights until he finally completed his task. His master was pleased by his diligence and finally revealed to Lu Ban his own exquisite woodworking models that were collected in a private showroom. He did not tell Lu Ban how to recreate these pieces, instead he instructed Lu Ban to figure out himself. Lu Ban was determined to learn his master's skills. He studied his master's woodwork. After three years of hard work, Lu Ban had become a master of his craft, and later, he became a well-known carpenter.



94. 止 (zhǐ) 部
Foot



古字形 𣥂

“止”是象形字，古文字像人之脚形，本义是指人的脚。“止”的本义被“脚”字取代后，“止”只用作动词，表示停止、制止、阻止等意义。作为部首，止部字多与行走等意义有关。例如“步”是指行走时两脚间的距离，或用脚走；“歧”的本义是岔道。又引申为不一致。

Ancient form 𣥂

止 is a pictograph. The ancient symbol for 止 looks like a foot. The original meaning of 止 is *foot*, but in modern Chinese this concept is represented by a different word and character 脚 (jiǎo). Now 止 is used only as verb meaning *to stop or to halt*. Characters with 止 often have meanings related to walking. For example, 步 (bù) means *the distance between two feet while walking*. It also means *steps*. The original meaning of 歧 (qí) was *forked road*. Its contemporary extended meaning is *divergent or different*.



故事 Story

94. 望梅止渴 (Wàng méi zhǐ kě) 望 watch 梅 plum 止 quench (stop) 渴 thirst



This story takes place during the Three Kingdoms Period. Before Cao Cao became King of the Wei State he first served as the General of Wei. One steamy summer day he led his army on a march through a mountain ridge in order to attack their enemies. Their pace was greatly slowed by the humidity and high temperature. The soldiers had no water to drink and some of them were suffering from heatstroke. Cao Cao was very worried that the battle would be lost because the men were exhausted. He asked the guide if there was any water nearby. The guide told him, there was no water near but there was a wood a few miles ahead. Cao Cao pondered for a few minutes, then he addressed his soldiers, "There is a forest of plum trees just ahead. I understand you are all thirsty and want to have some juicy plums. Let's move faster and get to the plum forest." The soldiers were immediately encouraged. Dreaming about the mouthwatering plums they felt they were not so thirsty, and so they picked up their pace and reached the destination as scheduled. Although the troop did not see a plum forest during their marching, they quenched their thirst by just thinking of plums.

望梅止渴 describes a situation of imagined satisfaction.



95. 寸(cùn) 部
Chinese unit of length



古字形 𠂇

“寸”是指事字，古文字强调了“寸”在人之手臂上的位置。“寸”的本义是“寸口”，即手腕上可以触摸到脉搏的部位，“寸口”是中医切脉常取的穴位。“寸”引申指长度单位。作为部首，“寸”通常位于汉字的下面或右侧，例如“寻”、“射”。寸部字多与手或手的动作或法度有关。“寻”是古代的长度单位（一寻等于八尺），转指寻找等意义。“导”是指引或带领。“射”是会意字，从弓从寸，从金文字形看，像箭在弓上，以寸（手）发出，小篆把“弓”讹写成“身”，所以有了今天的“射”字，“射”的本义是用手发箭使之击中目标。

Ancient form 𠂇

寸 is a “self-explanatory character”—指事字, or a character that symbolically suggests its meaning rather than being purely pictographic. The ancient form shows a hand. The horizontal stroke on the left indicates the acupuncture point on the wrist, which is about one inch below the end of the palm. The extended meaning of the 寸 is a Chinese unit of length (about 1.094 inch). As a radical, 寸 often appears on the right or at the bottom of a compound, such as in the characters 寻, 导, and 射. Characters with the 寸 radical tend to have meanings related to hands, action executed with the hands, or the direction of an action. 寻 (xún) is an ancient unit of length, (一寻—one xún, is about eight Chinese feet). Its extended meaning is *to look for*. 导 (dǎo) means *to guide*. 射 is an ideograph. The left part of 射 was

initially 弓 (bow) and the character indicated a hand 寸 pulling the bow string. With the development of Small Seal Script, 弓 later was modified into 身. 射 (shè) means *to shoot*.



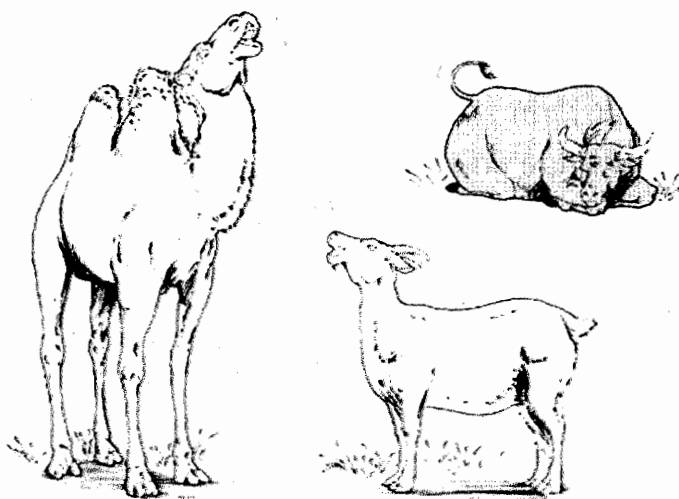
故事 Story

95. 尺短寸长 (Chǐ duǎn cùn cháng) 尺 foot 短 short 寸 inch 长 long



尺短寸长 means sometimes a foot may be too short and an inch may to be long—or everyone has his or her strong and weak points. Below is a Chinese fable *The Camel and the Goat*. It conveys a similar moral.

A camel and a goat were standing outside of a garden. They were engaged in a heated debate over the advantages and disadvantages of their heights. The camel was tall, so he argued that being tall was much better than being short. To prove his statement, he immediately stretched his neck and reached the tree leaves growing over the garden fence. “You see I can reach the tree leaves effortlessly,” he said to the goat. Of course the goat could not reach the tree leaves because he was short. The goat however, was able to steal inside of the garden between two upright poles of the garden fence. He started munching on the garden’s delicious grass. “See, I could get through the fence effortlessly but you cannot,” the goat said to the camel. They both insisted they were right, and neither would admit the merits of the other parties’ height.



96. 夂 (zhǐ) 部
Arriving



古字形 𠂔

“夂”是象形字，古文字描摹的是行走的人形，突出的是运动着的两条腿形，本义是指人从后面走来。“夂”在现代汉语中只用作部首，不单独成字。作为部首，“夂”通常位于汉字的上面，例如“冬”；有时位于汉字的下面或左侧，例如“复”、“处”。“冬”是会意字，从夂从欠(冰之古字)，表示秋季终了，已进入了寒冷季节。“夏”是会意字，据小篆字形分析，“夏”从页、从臼、从夂，页表示人头，臼表示两手，夂表示两腿，合起来表示一个高大完整的人。据说“夏禹”是夏代的开国之君，所以“夏”又引申指汉民族或中国，例如“华夏民族”。表示春夏秋冬之“夏”，用的是“夏”字假借义。

Ancient form 𠂔

夂 is a pictograph. The ancient script indicates a walking person, and its original meaning is *(a person) coming towards you*. In modern Chinese, 夂 is used only as a radical. As a radical, 夂 often appears on the top or bottom of a compound. 冬 (dōng) is an ideograph. The top part 夂 indicates *arrival* and the bottom part, 欠, is *ice*. Together, they indicate that winter has arrived. Therefore, the meaning of 冬 is *winter*. 夏 (xià) is also an ideograph. In its Seal Script version, 夏 clearly consists of three radicals: 页 (yè; *head*), 臼 (jiù; *two hands*), and 夂 (*two legs*). Together 夏 means *a giant person*. It is said that 夏禹 (Xià Yǔ) was the leader of the Xia Dynasty—the first dynasty in



Chinese history. This is the reason we refer to Han Nation as 华夏 (Huáxià). In modern Chinese, 夏 has another meaning—*summer*, because the word summer xià has the same pronunciation as 夏. We call words like 夏 (*summer*) phonetic borrowing characters—because they borrow the characters of homophonic words.



故事 Story

96. 夏至和冬至 (Xiàzhì hé dōngzhì) 夏 summer 至 arrive 和 and 冬 winter 至 arrive



In the Chinese lunar calendar, in addition to twelve months based on the moon, the lunar year is also divided into twenty-four solar periods based on the solar year. Each solar period is approximately 15 days and is named after natural phenomenon that generally occur during that period. 夏至 and 冬至 are two names of the twenty-four solar periods. The 10th of the 24 solar periods is called the beginning of summer because it begins with the *Summer Solstice*, 夏至. It usually occurs around June 21 to 22 in the Gregorian Calendar. Winter begins on 冬至—the *Winter Solstice*, which is the 22nd of the 24 solar periods. It usually occurs sometime between December 21 to 23. The twenty-four solar periods are very useful to Chinese farmers because they signal the best times for planting and harvesting.



97. 矢 (shǐ) 部
Arrow

 古字形

“矢”是象形字，古文字像箭矢之形，本义为箭矢。作为部首，“矢”通常位于汉字的左侧，例如“短”。矢部字多与箭或速度等意义有关。“矫”是形声字，从矢乔声，本是指一种器具的名称，该器具的作用是把箭杆揉直，引申为使直、使合适等意义，例如“矫正”、“矫形”。“知”是会意兼形声字，从矢从口，矢也表示读音，本义是指知道。古人认为，对知道的事情，反应的速度应该像离弦的箭矢那样迅速。也就是说“知”是指对某一事物的熟悉程度，如果熟悉，反应速度就快，也就是“知”了。

 Ancient form

矢 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 矢 looks like an arrow. Therefore, the original meaning of 矢 is *arrow*. As a radical, 矢 often appears on the left side of a compound. Characters with 矢 have meanings related to arrows or speed. 短 is a phonetic-semantic compound, 豆 hints the pronunciation—duǎn. 短 means *short (time)*. 矫 is another phonetic-semantic compound. 乔 represents its pronunciation—jiǎo. The original meaning of 矫 is *a tool used to make the shaft of arrow straight*. So its extended meaning is *to make an adjustment*. 知 (zhī; *to know*) is an ideograph but also a phonetic-semantic compound, because 矢 is not only used for indicating the meaning, but also to indicate the pronunciation of the character. The character 知 uses the arrow radical because the better one knows something, the faster his or her reaction time.





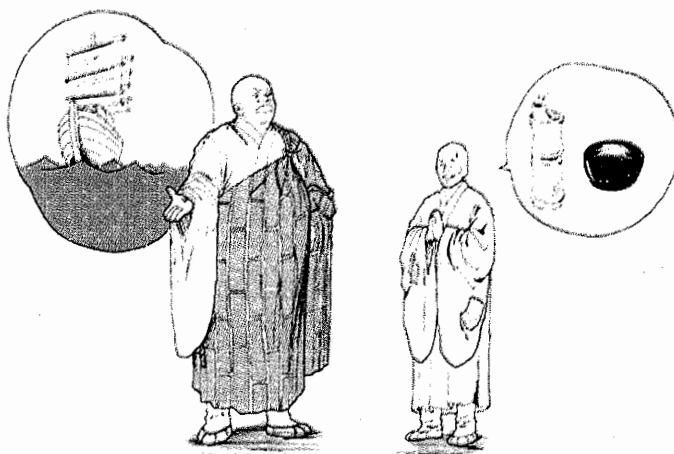
故事 Story

97. 有的放矢 (Yǒu dì fàng shǐ) 有 have 的 target 放 release 矢 arrow



有的放矢 means to shoot the arrow at the target. It is used to describe people who have a well-defined objective and a feasible plan in mind before taking action. Below is a Chinese fable that illustrates this idea.

In ancient times, there were two monks living in a temple deep in the mountains. Both of them never seen the sea. They decided to travel to the South Sea, but weren't sure how they should get there. Monk Wang planned to walk there on foot. He said, "It may take a very long time to get there by walking, but it is very practical. There are thousands of temples in China. I can find a temple or monastery in almost every village to sleep in at night, and beg in for food." Monk Li laughed at him, "It will take your whole life to get there." His plan was to make a ship and ride down the river to the South Sea. The next day, Monk Wang set out on his journey. Monk Li set about to build his ship. He hadn't realized making a ship was so difficult. The carpenter in the mountains had no shipbuilding experience and Monk Li did not have enough money to hire an experienced carpenter from far away. After a year, his ship was still just a dream. But Monk Wang had not only made it to the South Sea, he had returned to the mountains. He told Monk Li of his experiences travelling and the beauty of the South Sea. Monk Li realized that Monk Wang's success was owing to his 有的放矢.



98. 斤 (jīn) 部

Axe



古字形 𠂔

“斤”是象形字，古文字像斧头之形。“斤”的本义是斧头，假借指质量或重量单位，例如“斤两”、“五斤”。作为部首，“斤”通常位于汉字的右侧，例如“断”，有时位于汉字的左侧和下面，例如“欣”、“斧”。斤部的字多与砍伐等意义有关。“斩”是会意字，从车从斤，在中国古代有“车裂”之刑，所以“斩”字中有“车”，“斤”则指表示杀人所用的工具。“斩”引申指砍杀，例如“斩草除根”。“断”本来是指用斧头将物体分离、截开，引申指不能连续做某事。

Ancient form 𠂔

斤 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 斤 looks like an axe. Therefore, the original meaning of 斤 is axe. In modern Chinese the character 斧 (fǔ) is used for axe, so 斤 now only represents a unit of weight—one jīn. 斤 was used to represent this weight because it shared the same pronunciation as the ancient word for axe. One 斤 is about 500 grams, or 1.102 pounds. As a radical, 斤 can appear on the left, right, or bottom of a compound. Characters with 斤 often have meanings related to cutting or chopping. 斩 (zhǎn; *to slay*) is an ideograph consisting of two radicals 车 and 斤. In ancient China, one of the cruelest forms of capital punishment was to tie a person's hands and legs to four horse-drawn chariots then send the horses running in four different directions. The person would be torn into four pieces. This was similar to the English “drawing and quartering”. This is why “slay”—斩 has 车 and 斤 in it. 断 (duàn) means *to cut off*. Its extended meaning is *to discontinue*.



故事 Story

98. 疑邻盗斧 (Yí lín dào fǔ) 疑 suspect 邻 neighbor 盗 steal 斧 axe



Once upon a time, a village man lost his axe. He suspected that his neighbor's son, Dadong, had stolen it. Suspicious, he began to watch Dadong's every move. The more he watched, the more sure he felt that Dadong was the thief. But a few days later, the villager found his axe in the valley where he had been chopping trees before. On his way home, he bumped into Dadong again. This time, he found that Dadong did not look like a thief.

This story criticizes people who like to accuse others' of wrong-doing based on personal feeling rather than facts.



99. 舌 (shé) 部
Tongue



古字形 

“舌”是象形字，古文字像人的舌头之形，本义是指舌头。人之舌头有两大主要功能：一是用于表达，即说话；二是用于别味，即品尝味道。作为部首，“舌”通常位于汉字的左侧，例如“甜”。舌部的字多与舌头的作用有关。“甜”是会意字，从舌从甘，指像糖或蜜的味道，引申指舒适愉悦的生活，“甜”也常用来指好听的话语。“舔”是指用舌头接触东西。

Ancient form 

舌 is a pictograph. The ancient script indicates a person's tongue stretching out from the mouth. The meaning of 舌 is *tongue*. The tongue has two major functions: one is to speak, the other is to taste. As a radical, 舌 often is placed on the left side of a compound, such as in the character 甜 (tián; *sweet taste*). 甜 is also used to describe *sweet words or a sweet life*. 舔 (tiǎn) means *to lick*.





故事 Story

99. 舌战群儒 (Shé zhàn qún rú) 舌 tongue 战 fight 群 group 儒 scholars



This story took place towards the end of the Eastern Han period. Cao Cao, Liu Bei, and Sun Quan were three kings. Each occupied one area of China with their own army. Cao Cao, the King of the Wei State, intended to conquer Liu Bei—the King of the Shu State, and Sun Quan—the King of the Wu State. Cao's plan was to make friends with Sun Quan first, so that he could use Sun's army to defeat Liu Bei. Most of Sun Quan's military counselors were in favor of establishing an alliance with Cao Cao. Only Lu Su proposed that Sun Quan unite with Liu Bei and fight with Cao Cao. Lu Su knew it would be difficult for him to convince Sun Quan to adopt his idea because it was not favored by the majority. So he invited the Statesman Zhuge Liang to lobby Sun Quan's military counselors in support of his idea. After a series of heated debates with seven of Sun Quan military counselors, Zhuge Liang finally convinced Sun Quan to form an alliance with Liu Bei. Together, they formed a united army of Wu and Shu States and defeated Cao Cao. Zhuge Liang's feat of using his tongue to fight with seven military counselors was widely renowned.



100. 身(shēn) 部
Body



古字形 𠂔

“身”是象形字，古文字像妇女怀孕之形。本义是指女子怀孕，引申为人体之总称，例如“身体”。作为部首，“身”通常位于汉字的左侧，例如“躺”。身部的字大都与身体或身体的动作有关系，“躯”是形声字，从身区声，指身体。“躲”是形声字，从身朵声，为避开、隐匿之义，例如“躲让”、“躲闪”、“躲开”。“躬”也是形声字，从身弓声，为自身、亲自之义。

Ancient form 𠂔

身 is a pictograph. The ancient form of 身 looks like a pregnant woman. The original meaning of 身 is *body*. As a radical, 身 often appears on the left side of a compound. Characters with the 身 radical often have meanings related to the body or actions of body. For example, 躺 (tǎng) means *to lie down*; 躯 (qū) means *human body*; 躲 (duǒ) means *to hide (from attack)*; and 躬 (gōng) means *personally*.



故事 Story

100. 身在曹营心在汉 (Shēn zài Cáoyíng xīn zài Hàn)
 身 body 在 present 曹营 Cao's place 心 heart
 在 present 汉 Han



This idiom was derived from a story in the novel *The Three Kingdoms*. It is said that during the Eastern Han period, Liu Bei was defeated by Cao Cao. Liu Bei's important military officer, Guan Yu, was captured by Cao Cao. Cao Cao wanted to use Guan Yu's wisdom to benefit his army, so he did not kill him. Rather, Cao Cao appointed Guan Yu as his military officer. Although Guan Yu appreciated Cao Cao's benevolence and recognition, he was still loyal to Liu Bei. Later, when he learned of Liu Bei's whereabouts, he escaped Cao Cao's lands and returned to Liu Bei. People knew Guan Yu's body was with Cao Cao but his heart was with Liu Bei—身在曹营心在汉. Later people used this idiom to describe situations in which a person is not wholeheartedly devoted to his current job, and is longing for something else.



拼音检索 *Pinyin Index*

拼音 <i>Pinyin</i>	部首 Radical	英文意思 Meaning	部首号 Number of Radicals	页码 Page
B				
bā	八(ㄅ)	divide; separate	40	95
bái	白	white	73	157
bāo	勹	wrap; packet	87	185
bèi	贝(貝)	seashell	34	83
bīng	冫	ice	63	139
bǔ	卜	divination	79	169
C				
cǎo	艹(艸)	grass	2	19
chē	车(車)	cart; vehicle	35	85
chǐ	齿(齒)	tooth	80	171
chì	彳	small steps	49	112
chóng	虫	insect	12	39
chuò	辵(辵)	walking; movement	25	66
cùn	寸	Chinese unit of length	95	200
D				
dà	大	big, man	45	104
dāo	刀(刀)	knife	29	73
E				
è	歹(歹)	remains; skeleton	67	145
ér; rén	儿	child	84	179
ěr	耳	ear	72	155

F

fāng	方	square	81	173
fāng	匚	box; container	91	192
fù	阜(阝在右)	hill	36	87

G

gē	戈	weapon	52	118
gé	革	leather	50	113
gōng	弓	bow	66	143
gōng	工	ruler	93	196
gǔ	骨	bone	74	159

H

hǎn	厂	house; shelter	59	130
hé	禾	grain	32	80
hēi	黑	black	82	175
hù	户	single-leaf door	92	194
huǒ	火(灬)	fire	16	47

J

jiàn	见(見)	to see	76	163
jīn	金(钅)	gold metals	7	28
jīn	巾	towel; cloth	42	99
jīn	斤	axe	98	206

K

kǒu	口	mouth	3	21
-----	---	-------	---	----

L

lì	力	strength	55	123
lì	立	to stand	75	161

M

mǎ	马	horse	33	81
máo	毛	hair	78	167
mén	门(門)	door; gate	43	101
mǐ	米	rice	46	106



拼音检索

mì	糸(纟)	silk	11	37
mián	宀	house	31	78
mǐn	皿	container	62	136
mù	木(木)	tree	4	23
mù	目	eye	28	71

N

nè	疒	sickness	24	64
niǎo	鸟(鳥)	bird	23	62
niú	牛(牛 牝)	cattle	61	134
nǚ	女	female	14	43

P

pū	攴(攴)	action by using hands	51	116
----	------	-----------------------	----	-----

Q

qì	气	air; gas	86	183
qiàn	欠	breath	69	149
quǎn	犬(犴)	dog; animal	27	69

R

rén	人(亻人)	person	6	27
rì	日(日 日)	sun	18	52

S

shān	彡	embellish	85	181
shān	山	mountain	21	58
shé	舌	tongue	99	208
shēn	身	body	100	210
shī	尸	house, corpse	53	119
shí	石	stone; rock	19	54
shí	食(饣)	food	38	91
shí	十	perfect; many	48	110
shǐ	矢	arrow	97	204
shì	示(礻)	to show	37	89
shǒu	手(扌才)	hand	5	25
shū	殳	ancient weapon	83	177
shuǐ	水(氵水)	water	1	17
sī	厶	privacy	77	165



T

tián	田	land; field	47	108
tǔ	土(土)	soil; earth	9	32

W

wǎ	瓦	tile	89	188
wáng; yù	王(玉)	king; jade	17	49
wéi	口	enclose	57	126

X

xiǎo	小(㇏)	small	68	147
xié; yè	页(頁)	Head; page	41	97
xīn	心(㇀ 小)	heart	8	30
xué	穴	hole; cave; den	54	121

Y

yán	言(讠)	speech	13	41
yǎn	广	big house	44	102
yáng	羊	coat; sheep	65	141
yī	衣(衤)	clothes; clothing	26	67
yì	邑(阝在左)	city	30	75
yǒu	酉	alcohol	39	96
yòu	又	hand	60	132
yú	鱼(魚)	fish	20	56
yǔ	雨	rain	58	128
yǔ	羽	feather	64	140
yuè	月(月)	moon; flesh	10	34

Z

zhǎo	爪(㇏)	claw	88	187
zhǐ	止	foot	94	198
zhǐ	攴	arrival	96	202
zhōu	舟	boat	56	124
zhú	竹(㇏)	bamboo	15	45
zhuī	隹	short-tailed bird	71	153
zǐ	子	baby boy	70	151
zǒu	走	run; walk	90	190
zú	足(足)	foot	22	60

英文检索 English Index

英文意思 Meaning	部首 Radical	拼音 Pinyin	部首号 Number of Radicals	页码 page
-----------------	---------------	--------------	---------------------------	------------

A

action by using hands	支(攴)	pū	51	116
alcohol	酉	yǒu	39	96
air; gas	气	qì	86	183
ancient weapon	殳	shū	83	177
animal; dog	犬(犴)	quǎn	27	69
arrival	夂	zhǐ	96	202
arrow	矢	shǐ	97	204
axe	斤	jīn	98	206

B

baby boy	子	zǐ	70	151
bamboo	竹(𥵹)	zhú	15	45
big house	广	yǎn	44	102
Big; man	大	dà	45	104
bird	鸟(鳥)	niǎo	23	62
black	黑	hēi	82	175
boat	舟	zhōu	56	124
body	身	shēn	100	210
bone	骨	gǔ	74	159
bow	弓	gōng	66	143
container; box	匚	fāng	91	192
breath	欠	qiàn	69	149

C

cart; vehicle	车(車)	chē	35	85
cattle	牛(牛 牝)	niú	61	134
cave; den; hole	穴	xué	54	121
child	儿	ér; rén	84	179
Chinese unit of length	寸	cùn	95	200



汉

字部首教程

city
claw
cloth; towel
clothes; clothing
coat; sheep
corpse; house
container

邑(阝在左)
爪(ㄅ)
巾
衣(衤)
羊
尸
皿

yì	30	75
zhǎo	88	187
jīn	42	99
yī	26	67
yáng	65	141
shī	53	119
mǐn	62	136

D

den; hole; cave
divide; separate
divination
dog; animal
door; gate

穴
八(ㄨ)
卜
犬(犳)
门(門)

xué	54	121
bā	40	95
bǔ	79	169
quǎn	27	69
mén	43	101

E

ear
earth; soil
embellish
enclose
eye

耳
土(土)
彡
口
目

ěr	72	155
tǔ	9	32
shān	85	181
wéi	57	126
mù	28	71

F

feather
female
field; land
fish
flesh; moon
foot
foot

羽
女
田
鱼(魚)
月(月)
止
足(足)

yǔ	64	140
nǚ	14	43
tián	47	108
yú	20	56
yuè	10	34
zhǐ	94	198
zú	22	60

G

gas; air
gate; door
gold metals
grain
grass

气
门
金(钅)
禾
艹(艸)

qì	86	183
mén	43	101
jīn	7	28
hé	32	80
cǎo	2	19



H

hair	毛	máo	78	167
hand	手(手)	shǒu	5	25
hand	又	yòu	60	132
head	页(頁)	xié	41	97
heart	心(心)	xīn	8	30
hill	阜(阜在右)	fù	36	87
hole; cave; den	穴	xué	54	121
house	宀	mián	31	78
house, corpse	尸	shī	53	119
house; shelter	厂(厂)	hǎn	59	130

I

ice	冫	bīng	63	139
insect	虫	chóng	12	39

J

jade; king	王(玉)	wáng	17	49
------------	------	------	----	----

K

king; jade	王(玉)	wáng	17	49
knife	刀(刀)	dāo	29	73

L

land; field	田	tián	47	108
leather	革	gé	50	113

M

many; inclusion; perfect	十	shí	48	110
moon; flesh	月(月)	yuè	10	34
mountain	山	shān	21	58
mouth	口	kǒu	3	21
movement; walking	辶(辶)	chuò	25	66

P

perfect; many	十	shí	48	110
person	人(人)	rén	6	27

汉字部首教程

privacy	厶	sī	77	165
---------	---	----	----	-----

R

rain	雨	yǔ	58	128
remains; skeleton	歹(歹)	è	67	145
rice	米	mǐ	46	106
rock; stone	石	shí	19	54
ruler	工	gōng	93	196
run; walk	走	zǒu	90	190

S

seashell	贝(貝)	bèi	34	83
separate; divide	八(丷)	bā	40	95
sheep; goat	羊	yáng	65	141
shelter; house	厂(厂)	hǎn	59	130
short-tailed bird	隹	zhuī	71	153
sickness	疒	nè	24	64
silk	糸(纟)	mì	11	37
single-leaf door	户	hù	92	194
skeleton; remains	歹(歹)	è	67	145
small steps	彳	chì	49	112
small	小(小)	xiǎo	68	147
soil; earth	土(土)	tǔ	9	32
speech	言(讠)	yán	13	41
square	方	fāng	81	173
stand	立	lì	75	161
stone; rock	石	shí	19	54
strength	力	lì	55	123
sun	日(日 曰)	rì	18	52

T

tile	瓦	wǎ	89	188
to see	见(見)	jiàn	76	163
to show	示(示)	shì	37	89
tongue	舌	shé	99	208
tooth	齿(齒)	chǐ	80	171
towel; cloth	巾	jīn	42	99
tree	木(木)	mù	4	23

V

vehicle; cart	车	chē	35	85
---------------	---	-----	----	----

W

walk; run	走	zǒu	90	190
walking; movement	走(走)	chuò	25	66
water	水(氵 水)	shuǐ	1	17
weapon	戈	gē	52	118
white	白	bái	73	157
wrap; packet	勺	bāo	87	185



笔画检索 Strokes Index

部首 Radical	拼音 Pinyin	英文意思 Meaning	部首号 Number of Radicals	页码 page
---------------	--------------	-----------------	---------------------------	------------

二画

人(亻)	rén	person	6	27
儿	ér; rén	child	84	179
八(ㄨ)	bā	divide; separate	40	95
冫	bīng	ice	63	139
刀(刂)	dāo	knife	29	73
力	lì	strength	55	123
勹	bāo	wrap; packet	87	185
匚	fāng	box; container	91	192
十	shí	perfect; many; inclusion	48	110
卜	bǔ	divination	79	169
厂(丷)	hǎn	house; shelter	59	130
厶	sī	privacy	77	165
又	yòu	hand	60	132
口	kǒu	mouth	3	21
囗	wéi	enclose	57	126

三画

土(土)	tǔ	soil; earth	9	32
攴	zhǐ	arrival	96	202
大	dà	big, man	45	104
女	nǚ	female	14	43
子	zǐ	baby boy	70	151
宀	mián	house	31	78
寸	cùn	Chinese unit of length	95	200
小(ㄣ)	xiǎo	small	68	147
尸	shī	house, corpse	53	119
山	shān	mountain	21	58
工	gōng	ruler	93	196
巾	jīn	towel; cloth	42	99

广	yǎn	big house	44	102
弓	gōng	bow	66	143
彡	shān	embellish	85	181
彳	chì	small steps	49	112
艸(艸)	cǎo	grass	2	19
门(門)	mén	door; gate	43	101
马	mǎ	horse	33	81

四画

心(忄 小)	xīn	heart	8	30
戈	gē	weapon	52	118
户	hù	single-leaf door	92	194
手(扌 扌)	shǒu	hand	5	25
支(攴)	pū	action by using hands	51	116
斤	jīn	axe	98	206
方	fāng	square	81	173
日(日 日)	rì	sun	18	52
月(月)	yuè	moon; flesh	10	34
木(木)	mù	tree; wood	4	23
欠	qiàn	breath	69	149
止	zhǐ	foot	94	198
歹(歹)	è	remains; skeleton	67	145
殳	shū	ancient weapon	83	177
毛	máo	hair	78	167
气	qì	air; gas	86	183
水(氵 水)	shuǐ	water	1	17
火(火)	huǒ	fire	16	47
爪(爪)	zhǎo	claw	88	187
牛(牜 牛)	niú	cattle	61	134
犬(犴)	quǎn	dog; animal	27	69
王(玉)	wáng	king; jade	17	49
瓦	wǎ	tile	89	188
见(見)	jiàn	to see	76	163
贝(貝)	bèi	seashell	34	83
车(車)	chē	cart; vehicle	35	85

五画

田	tián	land; field	47	108
疒	nè	sickness	24	64
白	bái	white	73	157
皿	mǐn	container	62	136
目	mù	eye	28	71
矢	shǐ	arrow	97	204

汉

字部首教程

石	shí
示(礻)	shì
禾	hé
穴	xué
立	lì
鸟(鳥)	niǎo

stone; rock	19	54
to show	37	89
grain	32	80
hole; cave; den	54	121
stand	75	161
bird	23	62

六画

竹(竹)	zhú
米	mǐ
糸(纟)	mì
羊	yáng
羽	yǔ
耳	ěr
舌	shé
舟	zhōu
虫	chóng
衣(衤)	yī
页(頁)	xié

bamboo	15	45
rice	46	106
silk	11	37
goat; sheep	65	141
feather	64	140
ear	72	155
tongue	99	208
boat	56	124
insect	12	39
clothes; clothing	26	67
head	41	97

七画

言(讠)	yán
走	zǒu
足(足)	zú
身	shēn
辶(辶)	chuò
邑(阝在左)	yì
酉	yǒu

speech	13	41
run; walk	90	190
foot	22	60
body	100	210
walking; movement	25	66
city	30	75
alcohol; fermentation	39	96

八画

金(钅)	jīn
阜(阝在右)	fù
隹	zhuī
雨	yǔ
鱼(魚)	yú
齿(齒)	chǐ

gold metals	7	28
hill	36	87
short-tailed bird	71	153
rain	58	128
fish	20	56
tooth	80	171

九画

革	gé
食(饣)	shí

leather	50	113
food	38	91

骨

gǔ

bone

74

159

十二画

黑

hēi

black

82

175



